# (19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



# 

### (43) International Publication Date 4 January 2001 (04.01.2001)

# **PCT**

# (10) International Publication Number WO 01/00611 A1

- (51) International Patent Classification?: C07D 401/06, 471/04, 401/14, 413/14, 417/14, 405/14, A61K 31/501, 31/4439, 31/454, 31/4184, 31/4188, A61P 31/14 // (C07D 471/04, 235:00, 221:00)
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/EP00/05676
- (22) International Filing Date: 20 June 2000 (20.06.2000)
- (25) Filing Language:

**English** 

(26) Publication Language:

English

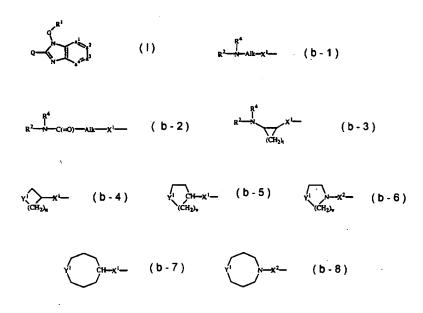
- (30) Priority Data:
  99202087.5
  28 June 1999 (28.06.1999)
  EP
  00200452.1
  11 February 2000 (11.02.2000)
  EP
- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
  JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA N.V. [BE/BE]; Patent
  Department, Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): JANSSENS, Frans,

Eduard [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE). MEERSMAN, Kathleen, Petrus, Marie-José [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE). SOM-MEN, François, Maria [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE). GUILLE-MONT, Jérôme, Emile, Georges [FR/FR]; Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, Rue Camille Desmoulins, TSA 91003, Cedex 9, F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux (FR). LACRAMPE, Jean, Fernand, Armand [FR/FR]; Janssen Cilag S.A., 1, Rue Camille Desmoulins, Tsa 91003, Cedex 9, F-92787 Issy-les-Moulineaux (FR). ANDRIES, Koenraad, Jozef, Lodewijk, Marcel [BE/BE]; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE).

- (74) Agent: QUAGHEBEUR, Luc; Janssen Pharmaceutica N.V., Turnhoutseweg 30, B-2340 Beerse (BE).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO,

[Continued on next page]

## (54) Title: RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS



(57) Abstract: This invention concerns the use of compounds of formula (I) wherein -a<sup>1</sup>=a<sup>2</sup>-a<sup>3</sup>=a<sup>4</sup>- is a radical of formula -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -N=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-N=CH-, -CH=CH-CH=N- wherein each hydrogen atom may optionally be substituted; Q is a radical of formulas (b-1), (b-2), (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7), (b-8), G is a direct bond or C<sub>1.10</sub>alkanediyl; R<sup>1</sup> is an optionally substituted monocyclic heterocycle; for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, in particular RSV infections. Certain compounds of formula (I) are new.







NZ, PL, PT. RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

#### Published:

- With international search report.

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

WO 01/00611

5

10

15

#### RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS REPLICATION INHIBITORS

The present invention is concerned with benzimidazoles and imidazopyridines having antiviral activity, in particular, they have an inhibitory activity on the replication of the respiratory syncytial virus. It further concerns their preparation and compositions comprising them, as well as their use as a medicine.

Human RSV or Respiratory Syncytial Virus is a large RNA virus, member of the family of Paramyxoviridae, subfamily pneumovirinae together with bovine RSV virus. Human RSV is responsible for a spectrum of respiratory tract diseases in people of all ages throughout the world. It is the major cause of lower respiratory tract illness during infancy and childhood. Over half of all infants encounter RSV in their first year of life, and almost all within their first two years. The infection in young children can cause lung damage that persists for years and may contribute to chronic lung disease in later life (chronic wheezing, asthma). Older children and adults often suffer from a (bad) common cold upon RSV infection. In old age, susceptibility again increases, and RSV has been implicated in a number of outbreaks of pneumonia in the aged resulting in significant mortality.

20

Infection with a virus from a given subgroup does not protect against a subsequent infection with an RSV isolate from the same subgroup in the following winter season. Re-infection with RSV is thus common, despite the existence of only two subtypes, A and B.

25

30

35

Today only three drugs have been approved for use against RSV infection. Ribavirin, a nucleoside analogue, provides an aerosol treatment for serious RSV infection in hospitalized children. The aerosol route of administration, the toxicity (risk of teratogenicity), the cost and the highly variable efficacy limit its use. The other two drugs, RespiGam<sup>®</sup> and palivizumab, polyclonal and monoclonal antibody immunostimulants, are intended to be used in a preventive way.

Other attempts to develop a safe and effective RSV vaccine have all met with failure thus far. Inactivated vaccines failed to protect against disease, and in fact in some cases enhanced disease during subsequent infection. Life attenuated vaccines have been tried with limited success. Clearly there is a need for an efficacious non-toxic and easy to administer drug against RSV replication.

EP-A-0,005,318, EP-A-0,099,139, EP-A-0,145,037, EP-A-0,144,101, EP-A-0,151,826, EP-A-0,151,824, EP-A-0,232,937, EP-A-0,295,742, EP 0,297,661, EP-A-0,307,014, WO 92 01697 describe benzimidazole and imidazopyridine substituted piperidine and piperazine derivatives as antihistaminics, antiallergics or serotonine antagonists.

The present invention concerns the use of a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for treating viral infections, wherein the compound is a compound of formula

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ A^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^1 \\ a^2 \end{bmatrix}$$
 (I)

10

5

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

-a<sup>1</sup>=a<sup>2</sup>-a<sup>3</sup>=a<sup>4</sup>- represents a bivalent radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH-(a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH-(a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH-(a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH-(a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N-(a-5);

20

15

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,  $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, polyhalo $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, carboxyl, amino $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl, mono- or  $\label{eq:continuous} \mbox{di}(C_{1\text{-}4}\mbox{alkyl}) a \mbox{mino} C_{1\text{-}6}\mbox{alkyl}, \, C_{1\text{-}6}\mbox{alkyl} \mbox{oxycarbonyl}, \, \mbox{hydroxy} C_{1\text{-}6}\mbox{alkyl}, \, \mbox{or} \, \mbox{a}$ radical of formula

25

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR $^{5a}R^{5b}$ , =CH $_2$ , =CH-C $_{1-6}alkyl$ , =N-OH or  $=N-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-3-

$$Y^{1}$$
  $CH-X^{1}$   $Y^{1}$   $CH-X^{1}$   $Y^{1}$   $CH-X^{1}$   $Y^{1}$   $N-X^{2}$  (b-5) (b-6) (b-7) (b-8)

wherein Alk is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanediyl;

5

30

Y<sup>1</sup> is a bivalent radical of formula  $-NR^2$ - or  $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -; X<sup>1</sup> is  $NR^4$ , S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, O, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>), CH(OH), CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), CH(OCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub>; X<sup>2</sup> is a direct bond, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), NR<sup>4</sup>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, NR<sup>4</sup>-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R<sup>3</sup>; with the proviso that when R<sup>3</sup> is hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, then R<sup>3</sup> can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkanediyl;

- R<sup>1</sup> is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl,
- C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, formyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-5</sub>alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy;

R<sup>4</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

 $R^{5a}$ ,  $R^{5b}$ ,  $R^{5c}$  and  $R^{5d}$  each independently are hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl; or  $R^{5a}$  and  $R^{5b}$ , or  $R^{5c}$  and  $R^{5d}$  taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>s</sub>-wherein s is 4 or 5;

 $R^6$  is hydrogen,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, formyl, hydroxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, hydroxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, polyhalo $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy; and

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

10

15

25

30

5

The present invention also relates to a method of treating warm-blooded animals suffering from or susceptible to viral infections, in particular RSV infection. Said method comprises the administration of a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a prodrug thereof, a N-oxide form, a pharmaceutically acceptable acid or base addition salt, a quaternary amine, a metal complex or a stereochemically isomeric form thereof in admixture with a pharmaceutical carrier.

A further embodiment of the present invention includes the compounds of formula (I')

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ A^2 \\ A^4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A^2 \\ A^3 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (I)$$

their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, wherein

 $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - represents a radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH- (a-1); -N=CH-CH=CH- (a-2); -CH=N-CH=CH- (a-3); -CH=CH-N=CH- (a-4); or -CH=CH-CH=N- (a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono- or

 $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy, polyhalo $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, carboxyl, amino $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, mono- or di $(C_{1-4}$ alkyl)amino $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, or a radical of formula

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>, =CH<sub>2</sub>, =CH-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

5

10

$$Y_{(CH_2)_v}^1$$
  $Y_{(CH_2)_v}^1$   $Y_{($ 

wherein Alk is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanediyl;

Y<sup>1</sup> is a bivalent radical of formula  $-NR^2$ - or  $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -; X<sup>1</sup> is  $NR^4$ , S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, O, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>), CH(OH), CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), CH(OCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub>; X<sup>2</sup> is a direct bond, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), NR<sup>4</sup>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, NR<sup>4</sup>-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R<sup>3</sup>; with the proviso that when R<sup>3</sup> is hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, then R<sup>3</sup> can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkanediyl;

R<sup>1</sup> is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-carbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

10

15

R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-5</sub>alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;

 $R^3$  is hydrogen, hydroxy,  $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxy, aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl or aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl or aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl or aryl $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl;

 $R^{5a}$ ,  $R^{5b}$ ,  $R^{5c}$  and  $R^{5d}$  each independently are hydrogen or  $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyl; or

R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup>, or R<sup>5c</sup> and R<sup>5d</sup> taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>s</sub>-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R<sup>6</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonyl or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, and C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy;

provided that when G is methylene, and  $R^1$  is 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 6-methyl-2-pyridyl, 2-pyrazinyl or 5-methyl-imidazol-4-yl, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  is -CH=CH-CH=CH- or -N=CH-CH=CH-, then Q is other than

$$H_{1} \longrightarrow H_{2} \longrightarrow H_{2$$

Yet another embodiment of the present invention includes the following group of compounds

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-

25 benzimidazol-2-amine:

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;

4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineetanamine;

- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-{(5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
- N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate;
- 5 N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
  - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-{(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine;
  - 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl[4,5-b]pyri
- 10 piperazineethanamine;
  - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine;
  - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride;
  - cenzimidazoi-z-anime umydroemonde,
  - 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-2-
- 15 oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate;
  - N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate;
  - 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1);
- ethyl 5-[[2-[[1-[2-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]
  1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate;
  - 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4-thiazolyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineetahnamine;
  - $N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1\\ H-benzimidazol-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1\\ H-benzimidazol-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)meth$
- 25 2-amine;
  - ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate;
  - 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate;
- ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; and
  - N-[1-(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-piperidinamine.
  - the prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and
- stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

  Said group of compounds will be referred to hereinafter as the compounds of group (I'').

15

20

25

30

35

The term prodrug as used throughout this text means the pharmacologically acceptable derivatives, e.g. esters and amides, such that the resulting biotransformation product of the derivative is the active drug as defined in the compounds of formula (I). The reference by Goodman and Gilman (The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics, 8<sup>th</sup> ed., McGraw-Hill, Int. Ed. 1992, "Biotransformation of Drugs", p. 13-15) describing prodrugs generally, is hereby incorporated.

As used herein C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 3 carbon atoms such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl and the like; C1-4alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as the group defined for C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl and butyl and the like; C<sub>2-4</sub>alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 4 carbon atoms such as ethyl, propyl, 1-methylethyl, butyl and the like; C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl and pentyl, hexyl, 2-methylbutyl and the like; C<sub>1-9</sub>alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 9 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl and heptyl, octyl, nonyl, 2-methylhexyl, 2-methylheptyl and the like; C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl as a group or part of a group defines straight or branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms such as the groups defined for C<sub>1-9</sub>alkyl and decyl, 2-methylnonyl and the like. C3-7cycloalkyl is generic to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl;  $C_{2-5}$ alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 2 to 5 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl, 1,2-propanediyl, 2,3-butanediyl, 1,5pentanediyl and the like,  $C_{2.5}$ alkanediyl is substituted on  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl as provided for in the definition of R<sup>2</sup>, it is meant to be substituted on one carbon atom thus forming a spiro moiety; C<sub>1-4</sub>alkanediyl defines bivalent straight and branched chain saturated hydrocarbon radicals having from 1 to 4 carbon atoms such as, for example, methylene, 1,2-ethanediyl, 1,3-propanediyl, 1,4-butanediyl and the like;  $C_{1-6}$ alkanediyl is meant to include  $C_{1-4}$ alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 5 to 6 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,5-pentanediyl, 1,6-hexanediyl and the like;  $C_{1-10}$ alkanediyl is meant to include  $C_{1-6}$ alkanediyl and the higher homologues thereof having from 7 to 10 carbon atoms such as, for example, 1,7-heptanediyl, 1,8-octanediyl, 1,9-nonanediyl, 1,10-decanediyl and the like.

10

15

20

25

30

As used herein before, the term (=O) forms a carbonyl moiety when attached to a carbon atom, a sulfoxide moiety when attached to a sulfur atom and a sulfonyl moiety when two of said terms are attached to a sulfur atom. The term (=N-OH) forms a hydroxylimine moiety when attached to a carbon atom.

The term halo is generic to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo. As used in the foregoing and hereinafter, polyhalo $C_{1-6}$ alkyl as a group or part of a group is defined as mono- or polyhalosubstituted  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, in particular methyl with one or more fluoro atoms, for example, difluoromethyl or trifluoromethyl. In case more than one halogen atoms are attached to an alkyl group within the definition of polyhalo $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, they may be the same or different.

When any variable (e.g. aryl, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5a</sup>, R<sup>5b</sup> etc.) occurs more than one time in any constituent, each definition is independent.

It will be appreciated that some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms may contain one or more centers of chirality and exist as stereochemically isomeric forms.

The term "stereochemically isomeric forms" as used hereinbefore defines all the possible stereoisomeric forms which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I''), and their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes or physiologically functional derivatives may possess. Unless otherwise mentioned or indicated, the chemical designation of compounds denotes the mixture of all possible stereochemically isomeric forms, said mixtures containing all diastereomers and enantiomers of the basic molecular structure as well as each of the individual isomeric forms of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and their prodrugs, N-oxides, salts, solvates, quaternary amines, metal complexes substantially free, i.e. associated with less than 10%, preferably less than 5%, in particular less than 2% and most preferably less than 1% of the other isomers. Stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are obviously intended to be embraced within the scope of this invention.

As used hereinafter the terms trans, cis, R or S are well-known by the person skilled in the art.

10

25

30

For some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I''), their prodrugs, N-oxides, salts, solvates, quaternary amines or metal complexes and the intermediates used in the preparation thereof, the absolute stereochemical configuration was not experimentally determined. In these cases the stereoisomeric form which was first isolated is designated as "A" and the second as "B", without further reference to the actual stereochemical configuration. However, said "A" and "B" stereoisomeric forms can be unambiguously characterized by for instance their optical rotation in case "A" and "B" have an enantiomeric relationship. A person skilled in the art is able to determine the absolute configuration of such compounds using art-known methods such as, for example, X-ray diffraction. In case "A" and "B" are stereoisomeric mixtures, they can be further separated whereby the respective first fractions isolated are designated "A1" and "B1" and the second as "A2" and "B2", without further reference to the actual stereochemical configuration.

For therapeutic use, salts of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are those wherein the counterion is pharmaceutically acceptable. However, salts of acids and bases which are non-pharmaceutically acceptable may also find use, for example, in the preparation or purification of a pharmaceutically acceptable compound. All salts, whether pharmaceutically acceptable or not are included within the ambit of the present invention.

The pharmaceutically acceptable acid and base addition salts as mentioned hereinabove are meant to comprise the therapeutically active non-toxic acid and base addition salt forms which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are able to form. The pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts can conveniently be obtained by treating the base form with such appropriate acid. Appropriate acids comprise, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrohalic acids, e.g. hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, sulfuric, nitric, phosphoric and the like acids; or organic acids such as, for example, acetic, propanoic, hydroxyacetic, lactic, pyruvic, oxalic (i.e. ethanedioic), malonic, succinic (i.e. butanedioic acid), maleic, fumaric, malic (i.e. hydroxybutanedioic acid), tartaric, citric, methanesulfonic, ethanesulfonic, pamoic and the like acids.

Conversely said salt forms can be converted by treatment with an appropriate base into the free base form.

10

30

The compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') containing an acidic proton may also be converted into their non-toxic metal or amine addition salt forms by treatment with appropriate organic and inorganic bases. Appropriate base salt forms comprise, for example, the ammonium salts, the alkali and earth alkaline metal salts, e.g. the lithium, sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium salts and the like, salts with organic bases, e.g. the benzathine, N-methyl-D-glucamine, hydrabamine salts, and salts with amino acids such as, for example, arginine, lysine and the like.

The term addition salt as used hereinabove also comprises the solvates which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') as well as the salts thereof, are able to form. Such solvates are for example hydrates, alcoholates and the like.

The term "quaternary amine" as used hereinbefore defines the quaternary ammonium salts which the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are able to form by reaction between a basic nitrogen of a compound of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') and an appropriate quaternizing agent, such as, for example, an optionally substituted alkylhalide, arylhalide or arylalkylhalide, e.g. methyliodide or benzyliodide. Other reactants with good leaving groups may also be used, such as alkyl trifluoromethanesulfonates, alkyl methanesulfonates, and alkyl p-toluenesulfonates. A quaternary amine has a positively charged nitrogen. Pharmaceutically acceptable counterions include chloro, bromo, iodo, trifluoroacetate and acetate. The counterion of choice can be introduced using ion exchange resins.

It will be appreciated that the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may have metal binding, chelating, complexating properties and therefore may exist as metal complexes or metal chelates. Such metalated derivatives of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

Some of the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may also exist in their tautomeric form. Such forms although not explicitly indicated in the above formula are intended to be included within the scope of the present invention.

A special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I) or (I') wherein one or more of the following restrictions apply:

- Q is a radical of formula (b-1), (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) or (b-8);
- X<sup>2</sup> is a direct bond, CH<sub>2</sub> or C(=O);

- R<sup>1</sup> is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio,
- C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-carbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-;
- R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl substituted with NHR<sup>6</sup>, or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl substituted with NHR<sup>6</sup> and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-5</sub>alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
   R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;
- R<sup>6</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, formyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonyl or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl.

A special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I') wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is 
$$R^2 - N$$
  $X^1$ 

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is NR<sup>4</sup>, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>) or CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), then R<sup>1</sup> is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

when Q is 
$$R^2$$
— $X^1$ —

25

wherein  $X^1$  is NR<sup>4</sup>, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>) or CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), then R<sup>1</sup> is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

when Q is 
$$R^2 - N$$

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is NR<sup>4</sup>, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>) or CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), then R<sup>1</sup> is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;

when Q is 
$$R^2$$
—N— $CH_2$ -

then  $R^1$  is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

when Q is 
$$R^2$$
—N— $X^2$ —

wherein  $X^2$  is  $CH_2$  or a direct bond, then  $R^1$  is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl.

Or a special group of compounds are those compounds of formula (I') wherein one of the following applies:

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-5); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-4) wherein u is 1,3,4 or 5; or (b-4) wherein u is 2, wherein Y<sup>1</sup> is -CH(NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>)-, wherein X<sup>1</sup> is CH(OH), CH(OCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub>, and wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, oxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-,

polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or

di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, or each of said heterocycles substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl groups; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy,

hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or

heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-,

35  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-,

 $C_{1\text{-}6} alkyloxy(-CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}O)_n\text{-, aryl} C_{1\text{-}6} alkyloxy(-CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}O)_n\text{- and mono-or} \\ di(C_{1\text{-}6} alkyl)amino(-CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}O)_n\text{-; or} \\$ 

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-5) wherein v is 3; or (b-5) wherein v is 2, wherein Y<sup>1</sup> is -CH(NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>)-, wherein X<sup>1</sup> is CH(OH), 5 CH(OCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub> and wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrrolyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylthio,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1</sub> 10  $_{6}$ alkyl)amino $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, polyhalo $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylcarbonylamino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR  $_{-}$ aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1.6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ arylC_{1.6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}\ and$ mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C<sub>1.6</sub>alkyl groups; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyridyl 15 being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylthio,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or  $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkylcarbonylamino,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl\text{-}SO_{2\text{-}6}alkyl-SO_{2\text{-}6}alkyl)$  $NR^{5c}$ -, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, 20  $halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\,C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\,arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$ and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, or pyridyl being substituted with, 2, 3 or 4 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl groups or 3 or 4 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy groups; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrazinyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyl, C1-6alkyloxy, C1-6alkylthio, 25  $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy,\ hydroxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ mono\text{-}or$  $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)amino, \, mono\text{-}or \, di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, \, polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl, \, C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)$ carbonylamino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -, aryl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d},\ HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},$  $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-\ and\ mono-or\ di(C_{1-6}alkyl)\\ amino(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-;\ or\ arylonething are also below the control of the control$ 30 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio,  $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy,\ hydroxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ mono\text{-}or$  $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)amino, mono-or\ di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)$ 35 carbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl,  $-C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d}\ HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-$  WO 01/00611

O)<sub>n</sub>-,  $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or  $di(C_{1-6}alkyl)amino(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-6); (b-7); (b-8); (b-5) wherein v is 2; or (b-5) wherein v is 3, wherein Y<sup>1</sup> is -CH(NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>)-, wherein X<sup>1</sup> is CH(OH), CH(OCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub> and wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1</sub>. 10 6alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl groups; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrimidinyl 15 or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more. such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylthio,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1-6$ 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub> 20 6alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl. each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, 25 such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub> 6alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1</sub>. 6alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1.6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$ , aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy(- $CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$  and 30 mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-5); (b-7); (b-8); (b-6) wherein v is 3; or (b-6) wherein v is 2, wherein Y<sup>1</sup> is -CH(NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>4</sup>)-, wherein X<sup>2</sup> is a direct bond or C(=O), or X<sup>2</sup> is a direct bond, C(=O), NR<sup>4</sup>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, NR<sup>4</sup>-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino,

cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or  $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkylcarbonylamino,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl\text{-}SO_{2\text{-}6}alkylcarbonylamino,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-SO_{2\text{-}6}alkylcarbonylamino,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-SO_{2\text{-}6}$  $NR^{5c}$ -, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>- $NR^{5c}$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d}$ , HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-,  $halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ C_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-},\ arylC_{1-6} alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n^-}$ and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is imidazolyl being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyloxy, C1-6alkylthio,  $C_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ arylC_{1\text{-}6}alkyloxy,\ hydroxyC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ mono-or$  $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)amino, mono-or\ di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl-aminoC_{1\text{-}6}al$ 10 carbonylamino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -, aryl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d}$ ,  $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n-}$ , halo $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n-}$ ,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_{n-}$ ,  $arylC_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ - and mono-or  $di(C_{1-6}alkyl)amino(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, or imidazolyl being substituted with 2 or 3 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl groups; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyridazinyl, pyrrolyl, or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or 15 where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkylthio,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or  $di(C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl)aminoC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ polyhaloC_{1\text{-}6}alkyl,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkylcarbonylamino,\ C_{1\text{-}6}alkyl\text{-}SO_{2\text{-}6}alkyl$ NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, 20 and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; or

Q is a radical of formula (b-1); (b-2); (b-3); (b-4); (b-5); (b-7); (b-8); (b-6) wherein v is 2; or (b-6) wherein v is 3,  $Y^1$  is  $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -, wherein  $X^2$  is C(=O) or  $X^2$  is C(=O), 25  $NR^4$ ,  $C_{1-4}$ alkyl- $NR^4$ ,  $NR^4$ - $C_{1-4}$ alkyl, and wherein  $R^1$  is pyridyl or imidazolyl, each of said heterocycles being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyloxy, C1.  $_{6}$ alkylthio,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, mono-or  $di(C_{1-6}alkyl)$ amino, mono-or  $di(C_{1-6}alkyl)$ amino $C_{1-6}alkyl$ , polyhalo $C_{1-6}alkyl$ , 30 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl,  $-C(=O)-NR^{5c}R^{5d},\ HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-,\ halo(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-,\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-,\ C_{1-6}alkyloxy(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-,\ C_{1-6}alk$ O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, or each of said heterocycles being substituted with, where possible 2, 3 or 4 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl groups; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrimidinyl or pyrazinyl, each of said heterocycles being 35 substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyl, C1-6alkyloxy, C1-6alkylthio,

- C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -, aryl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-,
- arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; or wherein R<sup>1</sup> is pyrrolyl or pyrazolyl, each of said heterocycles optionally being substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C1-6alkyl, C1-6alkyloxy, C1-6alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-10 carbonylamino,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -, aryl- $SO_2$ - $NR^{5c}$ -,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)- $NR^{5c}R^{5d}$ ,  $HO(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -, halo $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyloxy $(-CH_2-CH_2-O)_n$ -,
- Preferred compounds are 15

(±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate: 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-3pyridinol;

arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-.

- 20  $(\pm)$ -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-1Himidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate:  $(\pm)$ -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;  $(\pm)$ -2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-IH-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-
- 3-pyridinol; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2pyridinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate:  $(\pm)$ -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1H
  - imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;
- 30 (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1.4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;
  - $(\pm)$ -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;
  - $(\pm)$ -N-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-
- benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 35  $(\pm)$ -N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine;

N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; ( $\pm$ )-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;

the prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

## Most preferred are

- 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-
- o yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride;
  - ( $\pm$ )-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol;
  - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-*IH*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1);
- (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol;
  - (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate;
  - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-
- yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate;
  2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride;
  - 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate;
- ( $\pm$ )-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-IH-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; and
  - $(\pm)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)-methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine.$
- the prodrugs, *N*-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms thereof.

In general, compounds of formula (I') can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b), wherein P represents a protecting group, such as, for example  $C_{1-4}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective

Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991), with an intermediate of formula (III), wherein W<sub>1</sub> is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, bromo, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, e.g.

10

15

20

sodium hydride, disodium carbonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as N,N-dimethylformamide.

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, R<sup>2</sup> or at least one R<sup>6</sup> substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H-Q<sub>1</sub>, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein P represents a protecting group, for example C<sub>1</sub>.

4alkyloxycarbonyl, benzyl, or those protecting groups mentioned in Chapter 7 of 'Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis' by T Greene and P. Wuyts (John Wiley & Sons Inc., 1991).

$$P-Q_{1} \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow A^{1} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow H-Q_{1} \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow$$

When P represents, for example, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, said deprotection reaction can be performed by, for example, acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to heat the reaction mixture, in particular up to the reflux temperature. Alternatively, when P represents, for example, benzyl, the deprotection reaction can be performed by catalytic hydrogenation in the presence of hydrogen and an appropriate catalyst in a reaction-inert solvent. A suitable catalyst in the above reaction is, for

example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, and the like. An appropriate reaction-inert solvent for said reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, an ester, e.g. ethylacetate and the like, an acid, e.g. acetic acid and the like.

5

The catalytic hydrogenation reaction described above can also be used to prepare a compound of formula (I'-a) by deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV) wherein  $Q_1$  comprises an unsaturated bond, said  $Q_1$  being represented by  $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$ , and said intermediate being represented by formula (IV-a).

$$P \longrightarrow Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow A^{1} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{1} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{2$$

10

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, both R<sup>6</sup> substituents are hydrogen or R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are both hydrogen, said Q being represented by H<sub>2</sub>N-Q<sub>2</sub>, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1), can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V).

15

Said deprotection reaction can be performed in the presence of a suitable base such as, for example hydrazine, or in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol, acetic acid and the like.

20

Compounds of formula (I'-a-1) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI) according to the procedure described for the preparation of compounds of formula (I'-a).

$$P = Q_{2} - Q_{2} -$$

10

15

20

Compounds of formula (I'-a) or (I'-a-1), wherein  $Q_1$  or  $Q_2$  comprise a hydroxy substituent, said  $Q_1$  or  $Q_2$  being represented by  $Q_1$ ·(OH) or  $Q_2$ ·(OH), and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-2) or (I'-a-1-1), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII) as described hereinabove for the preparation of compounds of formula (I'-a).

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q, both R<sup>6</sup> substituents are hydrogen or R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the R<sup>6</sup> or R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> substituents, contains at least one hydrogen, said Q being represented by H<sub>2</sub>N-Q<sub>3</sub>H, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-2) can also be obtained by reductive amination of intermediates of formula (IX) in the presence of a suitable amination reagent, such as, for example, ammonia, hydroxylamine, or benzylamine, and in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst. An appropriate catalyst in the above reaction is, for example, platinum-on-charcoal, palladium-on-charcoal, rhodium-on-Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>, and the like, optionally in the presence of a catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

(O=)Q<sub>3</sub> 
$$\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a^4=a^3}{\bigvee}}$$
 amination  $H_2N-Q_3H$   $\stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4=a^3}{\bigvee}}$  (IX)

20

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q comprises a -CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub> moiety, said Q being represented by H<sub>2</sub>N-CH<sub>2</sub>-Q<sub>4</sub>, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (X).

NC-Q<sub>4</sub>

$$\stackrel{A}{=}$$
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_2}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_2}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_2}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_2}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_2}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 
 $\stackrel{A_1}{=}$ 

Said reduction can be performed with a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride or hydrogen, optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as Raney Nickel. A suitable solvent for the above reaction is, for example, tetrahydrofuran, or a solution of ammonia in an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like. Said reduction reaction performed in a solution of ammonia in an alcohol can also be used to prepare compounds of formula (I'-a-1-3), wherein R<sup>1</sup> is substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, said R<sup>1</sup> being represented by R<sup>1'</sup>-C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3-1) starting from an intermediate of formula (X-a).

$$NC-Q_4 \xrightarrow{R^{1'}-C_{1'-6}alkyl-OH} \\ NC-Q_4 \xrightarrow{a^1 a^2} \underbrace{reduction}_{ammonia/C_{1-6}alkylOH} \\ H_2N-CH_2-Q_4 \xrightarrow{N} \underbrace{a^1 a^2 a^2 a^3}_{a^4-a^3} \\ (X-a)$$

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q comprises a -CH<sub>2</sub>-CHOH-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH<sub>2</sub> moiety, said Q being represented by H<sub>2</sub>N-CH<sub>2</sub>-CHOH-CH<sub>2</sub>-Q<sub>4</sub>·, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-1-3-2), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XI) with ammonia in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol.

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R<sup>2</sup> or one R<sup>6</sup> substituent is formyl, said Q being represented by H-C(=O)-Q<sub>1</sub>, and said compounds being

10

15

20

represented by formula (I'-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia.

$$C_{1^{-4}}\text{alkyl} - C_{1^{-4}}\text{alkyl} - C_{1^{-$$

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q, R<sup>2</sup> is other than hydrogen, said R<sup>2</sup> being represented by R<sup>2a</sup>, R<sup>4</sup> is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said Q being represented by R<sup>2a</sup>-NH-HQ<sub>5</sub>, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-c), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) with an intermediate of formula (XIV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like. A suitable reaction-inert solvent for the above reaction is, for example, an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{N} A_{1}^{2} A_{3}^{2} + R^{2a} - NH_{2} \xrightarrow{amination} R^{2a} - NH - HQ_{5} \xrightarrow{N} A_{1}^{2a} A_{3}^{2}$$

$$(XIII) \qquad (XIV)$$

Compounds of formula (I'-c), wherein  $R^{2a}$  represents  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl substituted with  $N(R^6)_2$  and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, said  $R^{2a}$  being represented by  $[(C_{1-9}alkyl)CH_2OH]-N(R^6)_2$ , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-c-1), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XV) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

$$(R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}} \cap (R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9alkyl)-NH-HQ_{5}} \cap (R^{6})_{2}N_{-(C_{1}-9$$

Compounds of formula (I') wherein, in the definition of Q,  $R^2$  or one  $R^6$  substituent is hydrogen, said Q being represented by H- $Q_1$ , and wherein  $R^1$  is a monocyclic heterocycle substituted with 1 or more substituents selected from hydroxy,

10

15

hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, or HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, said substituents being represented by formula A-OH, said R<sup>1</sup> being represented by R<sup>1a</sup>-(A-OH)<sub>w</sub>, with w being the amount of substituents on R<sup>1a</sup> ranging from 1 to 4, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-d), can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, optionally in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as an alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

Alternatively, one protecting group may also protect more than one substituent of  $R^{1a}$ , said protecting group being represented by  $P_1$ , as represented by formula (XVI-a). The two ways of protecting the substituents of  $R^{1a}$ , i.e. with a separate, as in formula (XVI), or a combined, as in formula (XVI-a), protecting group, may also be combined in the same intermediate, as represented by formula (XVI-b).

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein Q is a radical of formula (b-2), said compounds being represented by formula (I'-e), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XVII) with an intermediate of formula (XVIII) in the presence of sodium

cyanide and a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. methanol and the like.

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl} - O - C_{-Alk} - X^{1} - N$$

$$O = Alk - X^{1} - Alk - X^{1} - N$$

$$O = Alk - X^{1} - Alk - X^{1} - N$$

$$O = Alk - X^{1} - Alk - X^{1} - N$$

$$O = Alk - X^{1} - Alk - X^{1}$$

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein in the definition of Q, X<sup>2</sup> is C<sub>2-4</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, said Q being represented by Q<sub>6</sub>N-CH<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-p), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XIX) with an intermediate of formula (XX) in the presence of isopropyl titanate (IV) and a suitable reducing agent, such as NaBH<sub>3</sub>CN, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.

5

10

15

20

25

$$H = C + C_{1-3}alkyl + NR^4 + NR^4$$

ompounds of formula (I') may be converted into each other following art-known functional group transformation reactions, comprising those described hereinafter.

The compounds of formula (I') may be converted to the corresponding N-oxide forms following art-known procedures for converting a trivalent nitrogen into its N-oxide form. Said N-oxidation reaction may generally be carried out by reacting the starting material of formula (I') with an appropriate organic or inorganic peroxide. Appropriate inorganic peroxides comprise, for example, hydrogen peroxide, alkali metal or earth alkaline metal peroxides, e.g. sodium peroxide, potassium peroxide; appropriate organic peroxides may comprise peroxy acids such as, for example, benzenecarboperoxoic acid or halo substituted benzenecarboperoxoic acid, e.g. 3-chlorobenzenecarboperoxoic acid, peroxoalkanoic acids, e.g. peroxoacetic acid, alkylhydroperoxides, e.g. t.butyl hydro-peroxide. Suitable solvents are, for example, water, lower alcohols, e.g. ethanol and the like, hydrocarbons, e.g. toluene, ketones, e.g. 2-butanone, halogenated hydrocarbons, e.g. dichloromethane, and mixtures of such solvents.

10

15

20

Compounds of formula (I'), wherein R<sup>1</sup> is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, said R<sup>1</sup> being represented by R<sup>1</sup>-C(=O)OC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-f), can be prepared by esterification of a compound of formula (I'-g) in the presence of a suitable alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, pentanol, hexanol and the like, and in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like.

Q 
$$= \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OH \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q - \end{pmatrix} \\ Q - \begin{pmatrix} R^1 - C(=0)OC_{1-6}alkyl \\ Q -$$

Compounds of formula (I'-a) may be converted into compounds of formula (I'), wherein, in the definition of Q,  $R^2$  or at least one  $R^6$  substituent is other than hydrogen, said  $R^2$  or  $R^6$  being represented by  $Z_1$ , said Q being represented by  $Z_1$ - $Q_1$ , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h), by reaction with a reagent of formula (XXI), wherein  $W_2$  is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, or 4-methylbenzenesulphonate, in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example disodium carbonate, dipotassium carbonate, sodium hydroxide and the like, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, acetonitrile, N,N-dimethylformamide.

$$I \leftarrow Q_{1} \leftarrow \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} \\ A^{2} \\ A^{3} \end{pmatrix} + Z_{1} \leftarrow W_{2}$$

$$(I'-a) \qquad (XXI) \qquad (I'-h)$$

Compounds of formula (I'-h), wherein, in the definition of  $Z_1$ ,  $R^2$  is  $CH_2$ - $C_{1.9}$ alkyl substituted with  $N(R^6)_2$ , said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h-1), can also be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a) wherein, in the definition of H- $Q_1$ ,  $R^2$  is hydrogen, said H- $Q_1$  being represented by H- $Q_{1b}$ , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-a-3), with an intermediate of formula (XXII), in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as sodium cyanoborohydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

10

15

20

$$H \longrightarrow Q_{1b} \longrightarrow Q_{1b}$$

Compounds of formula (I'-h), wherein  $Z_1$  comprises formyl,  $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkylcarbonyl, or  $C_{1\text{-}6}$ alkyloxycarbonyl, said  $Z_1$  being represented by  $Z_{1a}$ , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-h-2), can be converted into compounds of formula (I'-a), by acidic hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrobromic, hydrochloric, sulfuric, acetic, or trifluoroacetic acid or a mixture of said acids, or by alkaline hydrolysis in the presence of a suitable base, such as, for example potassium hydroxide, in a suitable solvent such as water, alcohol, a mixture of water-alcohol, methylene chloride. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol, 1-butanol, sec. butanol and the like. In order to enhance the rate of the reaction, it is advantageous to work at elevated temperatures.

$$Z_{1a}-Q_{1}$$

$$Q_{1}$$

Compounds of formula (I'-b) can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a) with formic acid.

Compounds of formula (I') wherein  $R^1$  is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with hydroxy, said  $R^1$  being represented by HO- $R^1$ , and said compounds being represented by formula (I'-i), can be prepared by deprotecting a compound of formula (I'-j), wherein  $R^1$  is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy or aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy, said  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl or aryl $C_{1-6}$ alkyl being represented by  $Z_2$ , and said  $R^1$  being represented by  $Z_2$ -O- $R^1$ . Said deprotection can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, such as, for

example methylene chloride, in the presence of a suitable deprotecting agent, e.g. tribromoborane.

Compounds of formula (I') wherein R<sup>1</sup> is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-k), can be converted into a compound of formula (I'-l-1) or (I'-l-2) by reaction with the appropriate amine of formula (XXIII) or (XXIV) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub> 
$$R^{1'}$$
 (C<sub>1</sub>-6alkyl)  $R^{1'}$  (C<sub>1</sub>-6alkyl)  $R^{1'}$  (C<sub>1</sub>-6alkyl)  $R^{1'}$  (I'-l-1) (I'-l-1)  $R^{1'}$  (XXIII) (I'-l-1)  $R^{1'}$  (XXIII) (I'-l-2)

10 Compounds of formula (I'), wherein R<sup>1</sup> is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with halo, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-m) can be converted into compounds of formula (I') by reaction with 1-butanethiol in the presence of palladium-on-charcoal and CaO in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as tetrahydrofuran.

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-29-

5

15

20

Compounds of formula (I') wherein a hydrogen atom in the radicals of formula (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) or (a-5) is replaced by nitro, said compounds being represented by formula (I'-n) may be reduced to a compound of formula (I'-o) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as platinum-on-charcoal, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, e.g. a thiophene solution. The reaction may be performed in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

The reactions described hereinabove for the preparation of the compounds of formula (I') can also be used to prepare the compounds of the group (I'').

In the following paragraphs, there are described several methods of preparing the intermediates in the foregoing preparations. A number of intermediates and starting materials are commercially available or are known compounds which may be prepared according to conventional reaction procedures generally known in the art or analogous to the procedures described in EP-A-0,005,318, EP-A-0,099,139, EP-A-0,151,824, EP-A-0,151,826, EP-A-0,232,937, EP-A-0,295,742, EP-A-0,297,661, EP-A-0,539,420, EP-A-0,539,421, US 4,634,704, US 4,695,569.

In the foregoing and the following preparations, the reaction mixture is worked up following art-known methods and the reaction product is isolated and, if necessary, further purified.

Intermediates of formula (III) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXV) with a suitable leaving group, i.e. W<sub>1</sub>, introducing agent, e.g. 1-halo-

15

20

25

2,5-pyrrolidinedione, in the presence of dibenzoyl peroxide, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrachloromethane.

Intermediates of formula (XXV), wherein R<sup>1</sup> is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with chloro, said R<sup>1</sup> being represented by Cl-R<sup>1'</sup> and said intermediates being represented by formula (XXV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVI), wherein (O=)R<sup>1b</sup>H is defined as a carbonyl derivative of R<sup>1'</sup> wherein one carbon or nitrogen, adjacent to the carbonyl, carries at least one hydrogen, with phosphorus oxychloride. Intermediates of formula (XXVI) may also react as their enol tautomeric forms.

$$(O=)R^{1b}H - G - H \qquad POCl_3$$

$$(XXVI) \qquad (XXV-a)$$

Intermediates of formula (III) wherein W<sub>1</sub> is chloro, which is attached to a carbon atom carrying at least one hydrogen, said G being represented by G<sub>1</sub>H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (III-a), can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXVII) with thionylchloride in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. methylene chloride.

$$R^1-G_1H-OH$$
SOCI<sub>2</sub>
 $R^1-G_1H-CI$ 
(XXVII)
(III-a)

Intermediates of formula (XXVII) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (XXVIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride.

$$R^{1} \longrightarrow G_{1}(=O) \longrightarrow R^{1} \longrightarrow G_{1}H \longrightarrow OH$$
(XXVIII) (XXVIII)

Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXVII) can also be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XXIX), wherein P is a suitable protecting group, e.g. C<sub>1-4</sub>alkylcarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium hydroxide.

$$R^1 - G_1H - O - P$$
  $R^1 - G_1H - OH$  (XXVII)

Intermediates of formula (XXVIII), wherein  $G_1(=0)$  is CH(=0), said intermediates being represented by formula (XXVIII-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXX), wherein  $W_3$  is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, with  $N_1N$ -dimethylformamide in the presence of butyllithium in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran, diethylether or a mixture thereof.

$$R^1 - W_3$$
  $R^1 - CH(=0)$ 

5

10

15

Intermediates of formula (IV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b), wherein P represents a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, with an intermediate of formula (III) according to the reaction described for the general preparation of compounds of formula (I').

Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXI-a) with an intermediate of formula (XXXII) that has reacted with methanesulfonyl chloride, in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and in the presence of a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide.

$$P = Q_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} H \\ N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A^{1} \\ A^{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A^{1$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) can also be prepared by a cyclization reaction of an intermediate of formula (XXXIII) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol or N,N-dimethylformamide, in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur.

$$P = Q_1 = C = NH$$
(XXXIII)
$$Q = R^1$$

$$Q = R$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein Q<sub>1</sub> comprises an unsaturated bond, said Q<sub>1</sub> being represented by Q<sub>1a</sub>(CH=CH), and said intermediates by formula (IV-a), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXIV) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate.

$$P-Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \xrightarrow{N} a^{1 \atop 1}a^{2} + R^{1}-G-W_{1} \xrightarrow{P-Q_{1a}(CH=CH)} N \xrightarrow{a^{1}\atop 1}a^{2}$$

$$(XXXIV) \qquad (III) \qquad (IV-a)$$

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein, in the definition of Q<sub>1</sub>, the X<sup>1</sup> or X<sup>2</sup> moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q<sub>1</sub> being represented by Q<sub>1c</sub>-NH, and said intermediates by formula (IV-b), may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVI) with an intermediate of formula (XXXVI).

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R<sup>1</sup> is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with amino or mono- or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, said R<sup>1</sup> being represented by R<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>N-R<sup>1</sup>, wherein R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> are defined as described hereinabove, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-c), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XXXVIII), in the presence of an appropriate catalyst, e.g. palladium, and (R)-(+)-2,2'-bis(diphenyl-phosphino)-1,1'-binaphtyl, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-33-

halo—
$$R^{1'}$$
 $P = Q_1$ 
 $A_1 = A_2$ 
 $A_2 = A_3$ 
 $A_3 = A_4$ 
 $A_4 = A_3$ 
 $A_4 = A_3$ 
 $A_4 = A_4$ 
 $A_4$ 

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein R<sup>1</sup> is monocyclic heterocycle substituted with C(=O)-NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>, wherein R<sup>5a</sup> and R<sup>5b</sup> are defined as described hereinabove, said R<sup>1</sup> being represented by R<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>N-C(=O)-R<sup>1'</sup>, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-d), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XXXVII) with an appropriate amine, represented by formula (XXXVIII), under an atmosphere of carbon monoxide, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g. palladium (II) acetate, and 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

5

10

15

halo 
$$\mathbb{R}^{1}$$
  $\mathbb{R}^{5a}$   $\mathbb{R}^{5b}$   $\mathbb{R}^{5a}$   $\mathbb{R}^{5b}$   $\mathbb{R}^{5a}$   $\mathbb{R}^{5a}$ 

Intermediates of formula (IV) wherein P-Q<sub>1</sub> comprises  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl or  $C_{3.7}$ cycloalkyl substituted with NR<sup>6</sup>-P, said  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl or  $C_{3.7}$ cycloalkyl being represented by  $Z_3$ , said P-Q<sub>1</sub> being represented by P-N R<sup>6</sup>-Z<sub>3</sub>-Q<sub>1b</sub>, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (XXXIX), wherein W<sub>4</sub> represents a suitable leaving group, such as p-toluenesulphonate. Said reaction can be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

$$H-Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N \qquad a^{1} \qquad a^{2} \qquad a^{2} \qquad A} + P \xrightarrow{R^{6} \qquad N \qquad A} Z_{3} - W_{4} \xrightarrow{N \qquad A} Z_{3} - Q_{1b} \xrightarrow{N \qquad a^{4} \qquad a^{3} \qquad A} (XXXIX)$$

$$(I'-a-3) \qquad (IV-e)$$

Intermediates of formula (IV-e), wherein R<sup>6</sup> is hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, said intermediates being represented by formula (IV-e-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XL) with an intermediate of formula (XLI) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} Q & Q_{1b} &$$

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b) can be prepared by protecting an intermediate of formula (XILII) with a suitable protecting group, such as, for example, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as methylene chloride or an alcohol, e.g. methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like, in the presence of a suitable reagent, e.g. diC<sub>1-4</sub>alkyldicarbonate, and optionally in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. sodium acetate.

10

5

Alternatively, intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b) can be converted into an intermediate of formula (XLII) by reaction with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid and the like or mixtures thereof, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

15

20

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) or (XXXI-b), wherein in the definition of Q<sub>1</sub>, the X<sup>1</sup> or X<sup>2</sup> moieties in the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said Q<sub>1</sub> being represented by Q<sub>1c</sub>-NH, and said intermediates by formula (XXXI-a-1) or (XXXI-b-1), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLIII-a) or (XLIII-b), wherein W<sub>5</sub> represents a suitable leaving group, such as for example a halo atom, e.g. chloro, with an intermediate of formula (XLIV).

·5

Intermediates of formula (XLIII-a) or (XLIII-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) with  $H_2P(=O)(W_5)_3$  in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid.

$$O = \bigvee_{\substack{N \\ H}} a_1^{1} a_2^{1} \qquad H_2P(=O)(W_5)_3 \qquad \bigvee_{\substack{N \\ M}} a_4^{1} a_3^{1} \qquad (XLIII-a)$$

$$O = \bigvee_{\substack{N \\ H}} a_1^{1} a_2^{1} \qquad H_2P(=O)(W_5)_3 \qquad \bigvee_{\substack{N \\ M}} a_4^{1} a_3^{1} \qquad (XLIII-b)$$

Intermediates of formula (XLV-a) or (XLV-b) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVI-a) or (XLVI-b) with an intermediate of formula (XLVII).

Intermediates of formula (XXXI-a) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVI-a) with P-Q<sub>1</sub>-C(=NH)-O-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>3</sub> in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

Intermediates of formula (XXXIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (XLVIII) with an intermediate of formula P-Q<sub>1</sub>=C=S, which is synthesized according to the procedures described in EP 0005318, in a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol, e.g. ethanol. To increase the reaction rate, the reaction may be performed at elevated temperatures.

$$R^{1}-G-NH$$

$$H_{2}N$$

$$A^{2}=A^{2}$$

$$A^{2}=A^{2}$$

$$A^{3}=A^{2}$$

$$A^{2}=A^{2}$$

$$A^{3}=A^{2}$$

$$A^{3}=$$

Intermediates of formula (XLVIII) can be obtained by reducing an intermediate of formula (IL) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, e.g. hydrogen, and an appropriate catalyst, e.g. Raney Nickel.

R<sup>1</sup>-G-NH 
$$\stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^2}{=}} \stackrel{a^2}{\underset{a^3}{=}} \stackrel{\text{reduction}}{\underset{NH_2}{=}} \stackrel{R^1-G-NH}{\underset{a^4}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{=}} \stackrel{a^2}{\underset{NH_2}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{=}} \stackrel{a^3}{\underset{a^3}{=}} \stackrel{(XLVIII)}{\underset{NH_2}{=}} \stackrel{\text{reduction}}{\underset{A^4}{=}} \stackrel{R^1-G-NH}{\underset{NH_2}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^4}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{a^3}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{NH_2}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{A^4}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{A^3}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{NH_2}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{A^4}{=}} \stackrel{a^1}{\underset{A^4}{=$$

10

20

Intermediates of formula (IL) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (L) with an intermediate of formula (LI), in which W<sub>6</sub> represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro. The reaction may be performed in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

$$R^{1}$$
— $G$ — $NH_{2}$  +  $\begin{pmatrix} W_{6} \\ Q_{2}N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{1} \\ A_{2} \\ A_{3} \end{pmatrix}$  (L1)  $\begin{pmatrix} A_{1} \\ Q_{2}N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{1} \\ A_{2} \\ A_{3} \end{pmatrix}$  (IL)

Intermediates of formula (L) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LII) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid, in the presence of a suitable solvent, e.g. an alcohol, e.g. ethanol.

$$R^{1}$$
— $G$ — $N$ 
 $C$ = $O$ 
 $R^{1}$ — $G$ — $NH_{2}$ 
 $(LII)$ 

10

15

20

Intermediates of formula (LII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (III) with NaN[C(=O)H]<sub>2</sub>.

$$R^{\perp}G-W_{1} + NaN[C(=O)H]_{2} \longrightarrow R^{\perp}G-N$$
(III)
(LII)

Intermediates of formula (IL) can also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LII) with an intermediate of formula (LIII) (J. Org. Chem., 25, p 1138, 1960) in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. N,N-dimethylformamide, in the presence of an appropriate base, e.g. sodium hydride.

Intermediates of formula (XXXIV) can be prepared by dehydrating an intermediate of formula (LIV) with a suitable acid, such as sulfuric acid.

$$P = Q_{1a}(CH_2-CHOH) = \begin{pmatrix} H & A & A \\ N & A & A \\ N & A & A \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & A & A \\ N & A & A \\ A & A & A \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & A & A \\ A & A & A \\ A & A & A \end{pmatrix}$$
(LIV) (XXXIV)

Intermediates of formula (LIV) wherein, in the definition of  $Q_{1a}$ , the  $X^1$  or  $X^2$  moieties are  $CH_2$ , said  $Q_{1a}$  being represented by  $Q_{1a}$ , and said intermediates being represented by formula (LIV-a), can be prepared by reacting a carbonyl moiety of formula (LV) with an intermediate of formula (LVI) in the presence of  $N_1N_2$ -disopropylamine and butyl lithium, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$P = Q_{1a'}(CH_2-C=O) + CH_3 + CH_3$$

Intermediates of formula (V) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVII) with 1*H*-isoindole-1,3 (2*H*)-dione in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethyl azodicarboxylate.

Intermediates of formula (V) may also be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVIII) with 1H-isoindole-1,3 (2H)-dione in the presence of a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, and a suitable solvent, such as N, N-dimethylformamide.

Intermediates of formula (LVIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LVII) with an intermediate of formula (LIX), wherein W<sub>7</sub> represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as N, N - diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.

$$HO-Q_{2} \xrightarrow{N} \overset{a^{1}}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{a^{2}}{\underset{a^{3}}{|}} + \overset{Q}{\underset{C_{1}-4}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{3}}{|}} + \overset{Q}{\underset{C_{1}-4}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{3}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{3}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}}\overset{Q}{\underset{a^{4}}{|}$$

10

Intermediates of formula (V), wherein in the definition of  $Q_2$ ,  $R^2$  is  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl, said  $Q_2$  being represented by  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl- $Q_{1b}$ , and said intermediates by formula (V-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LX), wherein  $W_8$  is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as dipotassium carbonate, and a suitable solvent, such as acetonitrile.

Intermediates of formula (LVII) wherein, in the definition of Q<sub>2</sub>, the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, also carries two hydrogen atoms, said HO-Q<sub>2</sub> being represented by HO-CH<sub>2</sub>-Q<sub>2</sub>, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVII-a), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXI) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as lithium aluminium hydride, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. tetrahydrofuran.

$$C_{1^{-4}alkyl-O-C(=O)}$$
  $Q_2$   $N$   $A_{a_1}$   $A_{a_2}$   $A_{a_3}$  reduction  $A_{a_4}$   $A_{a_3}$   $A_{a_4}$   $A_{a_4}$ 

Intermediates of formula (LVII), wherein, in the definition of Q<sub>2</sub>, the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also at least one hydrogen, said HO-Q<sub>2</sub> being represented by HO-Q<sub>3</sub>H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LVII-b), can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (IX) with a suitable reducing agent, e.g. sodium borohydride, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

10

15

$$(O=)Q_3 \xrightarrow{N} A_{a_1 a_2} A_{a_3} \xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} HO - Q_3 H \xrightarrow{N} A_{a_1 a_2} A_{a_3} A_{a_4 a_3}$$

$$(IX) \qquad (LVII-b)$$

Intermediates of formula (VI) wherein, in the definition of  $Q_2$ ,  $R^2$  is  $C_{1-10}$ alkyl substituted with  $N(P)_2$  and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the  $R^2$  substituent carries also at least one hydrogen atom, said  $Q_2$  being represented by  $(P)_2$ -N- $C_{1-10}$ alkyl-NH- $Q_{2a}$ H, and said intermediates being represented by formula (VI-a), can be prepared by reductive amination of an intermediate of formula (LXII) with an intermediate of formula (LXIII) in the presence of a suitable reductive agent, such as hydrogen, and a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal, and the like, and optionally in the presence of a suitable catalyst poison, such as a thiophene solution. A suitable solvent in this reaction is a reaction-inert solvent, such as an alcohol.

$$(O=)Q_{2a} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} Q_{2a} \xrightarrow{A^{2}} Q_{3} \xrightarrow{P} N - C_{1-10}alkyl - NH_{2} \xrightarrow{P} N - C_{1-10}alkyl - NH_{2a} + Q_{2a}H \xrightarrow{N} Q_{2a}H \xrightarrow{N$$

Intermediates of formula (LXII) can be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXIV) in the presence of a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. water.

$$(LXIV)$$

$$Q_{2a}$$

$$Q$$

Intermediates of formula (IX) may be prepared by deprotecting an intermediate of formula (LXV) in the presence of a suitable acid, e.g. hydrochloric acid and the like.

-41-

5

10

15

Intermediates of formula (LXV) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXVI) with an intermediate of formula (III) in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile.

Intermediates of formula (LXVI) wherein, in the definition of  $Q_3$ , the  $X^1$  or  $X^2$  moiety of the radicals of formula (b-1) to (b-8) represent NH, said  $Q_3$  being represented by  $Q_3$ -NH, and said intermediates being represented by formula (LXVI-a), may be prepared by cyclizing an intermediate of formula (LXVII) in the presence of mercury oxide and sulphur, in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. an alcohol.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & \\ &$$

Intermediates of formula (LXVII) can be prepared by reducing an intermediate of formula (LXVIII) in the presence of a suitable reducing agent, such as hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable catalyst, such as palladium-on-charcoal, platinum-on-charcoal and the like, in a suitable solvent, e.g. a mixture of ammonia in alcohol. Suitable alcohols are methanol, ethanol, 2-propanol and the like.

Intermediates of formula (LXVIII) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXIX) with an intermediate of formula (LXXX) in a suitable reaction-inert solvent, e.g. ethanol.

Intermediates of formula (IX), wherein, in the definition of Q<sub>3</sub>, R<sup>2</sup> comprises C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl, said Q<sub>3</sub> being represented by C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl-Q<sub>1b</sub>, and said intermediates being represented by formula (IX-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXI), wherein (O=)C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl represents a carbonyl derivative of C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl and wherein W<sub>9</sub> is a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. bromo, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. acetonitrile, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate.

Intermediates of formula (X) wherein  $Q_4$  comprises  $C_{1-9}$ alkyl, said  $Q_4$  being represented by  $C_{1-9}$ alkyl- $Q_{1b}$ , and said intermediates being represented by formula (X-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with a reagent of formula (LXXII), wherein  $W_{10}$  represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in a reaction-inert solvent, e.g. 3-methyl-2-butanone, in the presence of a suitable base, e.g. dipotassium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate and the like.

Intermediates of formula (X), wherein NC-Q<sub>4</sub> represents NC-(C<sub>1-9</sub>alkyl)(R<sup>4</sup>)N-C(=O)-Alk-X<sup>1</sup>, said intermediates being represented by formula (X-b), can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXIII) with an intermediate of formula (LXXIV)

10

15

20

in the presence of di-1H-imidazol-2-yl-methanone, a suitable base, such as N, N - diethyl-ethanamine, and a suitable solvent, such as methylene chloride.

Intermediates of formula (XI), wherein  $Q_4$  represents  $Q_{1b}$ , said intermediates being represented by formula (XI-a), can be prepared by reacting a compound of formula (I'-a-3) with an intermediate of formula (LXXV), wherein  $W_{11}$  represents a suitable leaving group, such as a halo atom, e.g. chloro, in the presence of a suitable base, such as disodium carbonate, and in the presence of a suitable solvent, such as 3-methyl-2-butanone.

Intermediates of formula (XIX) can be prepared by reacting an intermediate of formula (LXXVI) with a suitable acid, such as hydrochloric acid.

Pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) may be obtained by the application of art-known procedures. Diastereomers may be separated by physical methods such as selective crystallization and chromatographic techniques, e.g., counter-current distribution, liquid chromatography and the like.

The compounds of formula (I) as prepared in the hereinabove described processes are generally racemic mixtures of enantiomers which can be separated from one another following art-known resolution procedures. The racemic compounds of formula (I) which are sufficiently basic or acidic may be converted into the corresponding diastereomeric salt forms by reaction with a suitable chiral acid, respectively chiral base.

-44-

Said diastereomeric salt forms are subsequently separated, for example, by selective or fractional crystallization and the enantiomers are liberated therefrom by alkali or acid. An alternative manner of separating the enantiomeric forms of the compounds of formula (I) involves liquid chromatography, in particular liquid chromatography using a chiral stationary phase. Said pure stereochemically isomeric forms may also be derived from the corresponding pure stereochemically isomeric forms of the appropriate starting materials, provided that the reaction occurs stereospecifically. Preferably if a specific stereoisomer is desired, said compound will be synthesized by stereospecific methods of preparation. These methods will advantageously employ enantiomerically pure starting materials.

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

The compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof, show antiviral properties. Viral infections treatable using the compounds and methods of the present invention include those infections brought on by ortho- and paramyxoviruses and in particular by human and bovine respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

The *in vitro* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds was tested in a test as described in the experimental part of the description, and may also be demonstrated in a virus yield reduction assay. The *in vivo* antiviral activity against RSV of the present compounds may be demonstrated in a test model using cotton rats as described in Wyde et al. (Antiviral Research (1998), 38, 31-42).

Due to their antiviral properties, particularly their anti-RSV properties, the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof, their prodrugs, N-oxides, addition salts, quaternary amines, metal complexes and stereochemically isomeric forms, are useful in the treatment of individuals experiencing a viral infection, particularly a RSV infection, and for the prophylaxis of these infections. In general, the compounds of the present invention may be useful in the treatment of warm-blooded animals infected with viruses, in particular the respiratory syncytial virus.

The compounds of formula (I') or the compounds of group (I'') or any subgroup thereof may therefore be used as medicines. In particular, the compounds of formula (I), (I') or the compounds of group (I'') may be used in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment or the prevention of viral infections, especially RSV infections. The use as a medicine or method of treatment comprises the systemic administration to viral infected

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

subjects or to subjects susceptible to viral infections of an amount effective to combat the conditions associated with the viral infection, in particular the RSV infection.

The compounds of the present invention or any subgroup thereof may be formulated into various pharmaceutical forms for administration purposes. As appropriate compositions there may be cited all compositions usually employed for systemically administering drugs. To prepare the pharmaceutical compositions of this invention, an effective amount of the particular compound, optionally in addition salt form or as metal complex, as the active ingredient is combined in intimate admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, which carrier may take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration. These pharmaceutical compositions are desirable in unitary dosage form suitable, particularly, for administration orally, rectally, percutaneously, or by parenteral injection. For example, in preparing the compositions in oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical media may be employed such as, for example, water, glycols, oils, alcohols and the like in the case of oral liquid preparations such as suspensions, syrups, elixirs, emulsions and solutions; or solid carriers such as starches, sugars, kaolin, lubricants, binders, disintegrating agents and the like in the case of powders, pills, capsules, and tablets. Because of their ease in administration, tablets and capsules represent the most advantageous oral dosage unit forms, in which case solid pharmaceutical carriers are obviously employed. For parenteral compositions, the carrier will usually comprise sterile water, at least in large part, though other ingredients, for example, to aid solubility, may be included. Injectable solutions, for example, may be prepared in which the carrier comprises saline solution, glucose solution or a mixture of saline and glucose solution. Injectable suspensions may also be prepared in which case appropriate liquid carriers, suspending agents and the like may be employed. Also included are solid form preparations which are intended to be converted, shortly before use, to liquid form preparations. In the compositions suitable for percutaneous administration, the carrier optionally comprises a penetration enhancing agent and/or a suitable wetting agent, optionally combined with suitable additives of any nature in minor proportions, which additives do not introduce a significant deleterious effect on the skin.

The compounds of the present invention may also be administered via oral inhalation or insufflation by means of methods and formulations employed in the art for administration via this way. Thus, in general the compounds of the present invention may be administered to the lungs in the form of a solution, a suspension or a dry powder, a solution being preferred. Any system developed for the delivery of solutions,

-46-

suspensions or dry powders via oral inhalation or insufflation are suitable for the administration of the present compounds.

Thus, the present invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition adapted for administration by inhalation or insufflation through the mouth comprising a compound of formula (I') or a compound of the group (I'') and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Preferably, the compounds of the present invention are administered via inhalation of a solution in nebulized or aerosolized doses.

It is especially advantageous to formulate the aforementioned pharmaceutical compositions in unit dosage form for ease of administration and uniformity of dosage. Unit dosage form as used herein refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active ingredient calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier. Examples of such unit dosage forms are tablets (including scored or coated tablets), capsules, pills, powder packets, suppositories, wafers, injectable solutions or suspensions and the like, and segregated multiples thereof.

10

15

20

30

35

In general it is contemplated that an antivirally effective daily amount would be from 0.01 mg/kg to 500 mg/kg body weight, more preferably from 0.1 mg/kg to 50 mg/kg body weight. It may be appropriate to administer the required dose as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms, for example, containing 1 to 1000 mg, and in particular 5 to 200 mg of active ingredient per unit dosage form.

It may be appropriate to administer an antivirally effective daily dosage as two, three, four or more sub-doses at appropriate intervals throughout the day. Said sub-doses may be formulated as unit dosage forms.

The exact dosage and frequency of administration depends on the particular compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of group (I'') used, the particular condition being treated, the severity of the condition being treated, the age, weight, sex, extent of disorder and general physical condition of the particular patient as well as other medication the individual may be taking, as is well known to those skilled in the art. Furthermore, it is evident that said effective daily amount may be lowered or increased depending on the response of the treated subject and/or depending on the evaluation of the physician prescribing the compounds of the instant invention. The effective daily amount ranges mentioned hereinabove are therefore only guidelines.

20

Also, the combination of another antiviral agent and a compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of the group (I'') can be used as a medicine. Thus, the present invention also relates to a product containing (a) a compound of formula (I), (I') or a compound of the group (I''), and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in antiviral treatment. The different drugs may be combined in a single preparation together with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. For instance, the compounds of the present invention may be combined with interferonbeta or tumor necrosis factor-alpha in order to treat or prevent RSV infections.

10 The following examples are intended to illustrate the present invention.

## Experimental part

Hereinafter, "DMF" is defined as *N*,*N*-dimethylformamide, "DIPE" is defined as diisopropylether, "DMSO" is defined as dimethylsulfoxide, and "THF" is defined as tetrahydrofuran.

# 15 Preparation of the intermediate compounds

#### Example A1

a) NaOCH<sub>3</sub> (0.2 mol) was added to a mixture of *N*-(4-piperidinyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrobromide (0.1 mol) in methanol (389ml), the mixture was cooled on an ice bath and stirred for 2 hours. Bis(1,1-dimethylethyl) dicarbonoate (0.1mol) was added to a cooled mixture on an ice bath and then stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The mixture was evaporated and suspended in water/DIPE. The residue was filtered off, washed with water/DIPE and dried. The residue was boiled up in CH<sub>3</sub>OH. Yield: 17.46g of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinecarboxylate (55.2%) (interm. 1).

1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.055 mol) and then dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added to a mixture of 2,6-dimethylpyrazine (0.05 mol) in CCl<sub>4</sub> (100ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, stirred at room temperature under N<sub>2</sub> flow overnight, cooled on an ice bath and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated, to give residue 1. NaH (0.04 mol) was added to a solution of intermediate (1) (0.04 mol) in
 DMF (150ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature under N<sub>2</sub> flow for 1 hour. Residue 1 was dissolved in DMF (50ml) and added dropwise to the mixture. The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. DMF was evaporated. The residue was taken

up in  $H_2O$  and the mixture was extracted with  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH$  98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 6.82g of intermediate (2) (32%).

# Example A2

Preparation of (interm. 3)

Reaction under  $N_2$  flow. NaH 60% (0.02 mol) was added to a mixture of ( $\pm$ )-6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridinemethanol (0.02 mol) in DMF (75ml). Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.02 mol) was added. The mixture was added at room temperature to a mixture of intermediate (1) (0.02 mol) and NaH (0.022 mol) in DMF (100ml), previously stirred at 40°C for 1 hour. The mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in  $H_2O$  and  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2$ / ( $CH_3OH/NH_3$ ) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.52g of intermediate (3) (31%).

## Example A3

10

15

20

Preparation of o (interm. 4)

2-Chloro-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazole (0.0615 mol) and ethyl 4-amino-hexahydro-1*H*-azepine-1-carboxylate (0.123 mol) were stirred at 160°C for 3 hours. H<sub>2</sub>O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13.6g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 98/2/0.1). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 10.5g of intermediate (4) (43%).

#### 25 Example A4

A mixture of ethyl 3-amino-4-[[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]amino]benzoate (0.166 mol) and 4-isothiocyanato-1-(phenylmethyl)piperidine (0.166 mol) in ethanol (500ml) was stirred and refluxed for 8 hours and at room temperature overnight. The precipitate was filtered off and used without further purification. Yield: intermediate (5).

A mixture of intermediate (5) (0.16 mol), HgO (0.192 mol) and S (spat.tip) in DMF (100ml) was stirred at 80°C for 4 hours, filtered warm over dicalite, washed with warm DMF, heated again and filtered warm over dicalite. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was co-evaporated with toluene. The residue was crystallized from CH<sub>3</sub>CN. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 53.5g of intermediate (6) (70%)

## Example A5

15

20

A mixture of N-(1-methylethyl)-2-propanamine (0.098 mol) in THF (100ml) was stirred at -40°C under N<sub>2</sub> flow. BuLi 1.6M in hexane (0.098 mol) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at -40°C for 30 min and cooled to -70°C. A mixture of 1-(diethoxymethyl)-2-methyl-1H-benzimidazole (0.098 mol) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise and the mixture was stirred for 45 minutes. A mixture of hexahydro-1-(phenylmethyl)-4H-azepin-4-one (0.049 mol) in THF (50ml) was added dropwise at -70°C. The mixture was hydrolized cold and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH 98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated (yielding 7.5g). Part of the residue (3.5g) was crystallized from EtOAc. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.3g of intermediate (7).

A mixture of intermediate (7) (0.029 mol) in 1,1'-oxybis[2-methoxyethane] (300ml) and H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> conc. (20ml) was stirred at 160°C for 24 hours. Ice water was added. The mixture was basified with K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solid and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer

was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 18g of a mixture of 2 compounds, of which one compound is intermediate (8) (75%).

A mixture of intermediate (8), 2-(chloromethyl)pyridine (0.047 mol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (0.0775 mol) in acetonitrile (500ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours.  $H_2O$  was added and the mixture was extracted with  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 15.4g of a mixture of 2 compounds, of which one is intermediate (9).

## Example A6

10

15

20

N,N-diethylethamine (16ml) and then 2-chloromethyl-6-methyl-3-pyridinol (0.0376 mol) were added to a mixture of ethyl 4-[(3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl)amino]-1-piperdinecarboxylate (0.0376 mol) in DMF (550ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours and at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was poured out into H<sub>2</sub>O and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by HPLC over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH 95/5 to 70/30). The desired fraction was collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.1 g of intermediate (10).

#### Example A7

a) Preparation of 
$$s$$
 (interm. 11)

A mixture of 1,4-dioxaspiro[4,5]decan-8-amine (0.28 mol) and 1-isothiocyanato-2-nitrobenzene (0.28 mol) in ethanol (300ml) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The product was used without further purification. Yield: 90g of intermediate (11).

b) Preparation of 
$$S$$
 (interm. 12)

10

15

20

A mixture of intermediate (11) (0.178 mol) in NH<sub>3</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH (500ml) and THF (100ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with Pd/C (52g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH<sub>3</sub>OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The product was used without further purification. Yield: 44g of intermediate (12).

A mixture of intermediate (12) (0.071 mol), HgO (0.142 mol) and S (0.56g) in ethanol (300ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours, filtered over celite, washed with  $CH_2Cl_2$  and the filtrate was evaporated. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The residues were combined and then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/NH_4OH$  94/6/0.5; 20-45 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 14.5g of intermediate (13) (43%); mp. >260°C.

A mixture of intermediate (13) (0.049 mol), 2-(chloromethyl)pyridine (0.0735 mol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (0.196 mol) in acetonitrile (325ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and then brought to room temperature. The reaction was carried out again using the same quantities. The mixtures were combined.  $H_2O$  was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/NH_4OH$  98/2/0.1; 20-45  $\mu$ m). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction (0.6g) was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.46g of intermediate (14); mp. 136°C.

A mixture of intermediate (14) (0.077 mol) in HCl 3N (350ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour, poured out into ice water, basified with  $K_2CO_3$  solid and extracted with  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The organic layer was separated, washed with  $H_2O$ , dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered

and the solvent was evaporated. Part of the residue (1.5g) was crystallized from CH<sub>3</sub>CN and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.5g of intermediate (15); mp. 148°C.

## Example A8

LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (0.023 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of (±)-ethyl α-ethyl-4[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineacetate (0.021 mol) in
THF (100ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. EtOAc was added. The
mixture was hydrolized with ice water, filtered over celite, washed with EtOAc, dried
(MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 7.2g of intermediate (16)
 (88%).

Diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.028 mol) was added slowly at room temperature to a solution of intermediate (16) (0.019 mol), 1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.028 mol) and triphenyl phosphine (0.028 mol) in THF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. The residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The solution was acidified with HCl 3N, basified with NH<sub>4</sub>OH and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (12g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 97/3/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 5.5g of intermediate (17) (57%).

#### Example A9

15

20

A mixture of 8-[[1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1,4,8-dioxa-8-azaspiro[4.5]decane (0.0196 mol) in HCl 6N (55ml) and H<sub>2</sub>O (55ml) was

stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. Toluene was added. The mixture was poured out on ice, alkalized with a NaOH solution and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Part of this fraction was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.32g of intermediate (18) (91%).

A mixture of intermediate (18) (0.008 mol) and N,N-dibenzylethylenediamine (0.01 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (0.5ml). After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. Yield: 5.39g of intermediate (19) (quant.).

## Example A10

20

A mixture of (±)-N-(4-piperidinyl)-1-[1-(2-pyridyl)ethyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine (0.026 mol), 2-chloropropanenitrile (0.039 mol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.052 mol) in acetonitrile (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 8 hours. H<sub>2</sub>O was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (8.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH 96/4; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 4.5g of intermediate (20) (46%).

A mixture of compound 49 (0.0164 mol), 1-bromo-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.03 mol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.06 mol) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for several hours. H<sub>2</sub>O was added. The solvent was evaporated. 4-Methyl-2-pentanone was added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 98/2). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.75g of intermediate (22) (40%).

# Example A11

Preparation of

A mixture of compound 90 (0.015 mol), (chloromethyl)oxirane (0.008 mol) and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.59g) in 4-methyl-2-pentanone (150ml) was heated slowly to 100°C (to 40°C in 1 hour, 70°C in 1 hour), stirred at 100°C overnight, then stirred and refluxed for 20 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 95/5). Two fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. Fraction 1 was crystallized from DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.18g of intermediate (21).

## Example A12

5

15

20

a) Preparation of

Methylsulfonyl chloride (0.0512 mol) was added dropwise at 0°C under N2 flow to a 10 mixture of 4-[[1-(2-pyridinylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidineethanol (0.0256 mol) and N,N-diethylethanamine (0.0512 mol) in  $CH_2Cl_2$  (200ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 90 minutes. The solvent was evaporated till dryness.. Yielding: intermediate (23)

A mixture of intermediate (23) (0.028 mol), 2-[(phenylmethyl)amino]ethanol, (0.034 mol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.112 mol) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (200ml) was stirred at 60°C for 4 hours. H<sub>2</sub>O was added and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/CH_3OH/NH_4OH\ 97/3/0.5;\ 35-70\ \mu m).$  The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 5.5g of intermediate (24) (41%).

#### Example A13

Preparation of

(interm. 25)

HCl 12N (165ml) was added to a mixture of

(interm. 36), prepared according to example A7c), (0.049 mol) in H<sub>2</sub>O (165ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated. HBr 48% (320ml) was added. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and then stirred overnight. The solvent was evaporated. 2-Propanol was added and the solvent was evaporated again. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The mixture was decanted, taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O/DIPE and then separated into its layers. CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> was added to the aqueous layer. The mixture was alkalized with NH<sub>4</sub>OH. 2-Propanol was added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 15g of intermediate (25).

#### Example A14

5

10

15

20

a) Preparation of (interm. 26)

3,4-diaminophenyl-(3-fluorophenyl)methanone (0.056 mol) and urea (0.084 mol) were stirred at 150 à 160°C for 4 hours (melt) and then cooled. Water was added. The mixture was stirred at 50°C for a while and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, stirred in 2-propanone and dried. Yield: 11.4g of intermediate (26).

b) Preparation of (interm. 27)

Phosphorus oxychloride (50ml) was added carefully to intermediate (26) (0.045 mol). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours and then was stood at room temperature over the weekend. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ice/K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solid. The mixture was separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The undissolved material was filtered off to give residue 1. The combined organic layer was dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated to give residue 2. Residue 1 and residue 2 were combined. Yield: 16.75g

of intermediate (27) (100%).

## Example A15

Preparation of

A mixture of compound (341) (0.0025 mol), prepared according to B25a), 2-(2-bromoethyl)-1H-Isoindole-1,3(2H)-dione (0.00275 mol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (3g) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and then washed with water. The organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: intermediate (28).

10

15

20

25

30

5

#### Example A16

- a) 2, 4,5-trimethyloxazole (0.225mol) was stirred in CCl<sub>4</sub> (500mL) under  $N_2$ -flow. Then 1-bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.225mol) and benzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added. This mixture was stirred and refluxed for 1hour under  $N_2$ -flow. The reaction mixture was cooled in an ice bath (ice/salt). The mixture was filtered. The filtrate was evaporated. Yield: 42.7g (<100%) of 5-(bromomethyl)-2,4-dimethyloxazole (intermediate 30).
- b) Intermediate (30) (0.225 mol) was taken up in DMF (450ml). Na[N(CH(=O))<sub>2</sub>] (0.225 mol) was added portionwise and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 1hour and at room temperature overnight. The mixture was evaporated. Yield: 41g (100%) of N-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-N-formylformamide (intermediate 31).
- c) A mixture of intermediate (31) (0.225 mol) in HCl 36% (120ml) and ethanol (500ml) was refluxed for 1hour and stirred overnight. The mixture was filtered off, the precipitate was washed with C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in ice water, alkalized with NaOH and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was separated and the organic layer was dried and evaporated. Yield: 28g (100%) of 2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolmethanamine (intermediate 32).
- d) 2-chloro-3-nitropyridine (0.225 mol) and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.225 mol) were added to a mixture of intermediate (32) (0.225 mol) in ethanol (500ml) and the mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6hours. The mixture was evaporated and the residue was taken up in water and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was separated and the organic layer was

dried, filtered off and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel. The pure fractions were collected and evaporated. Yield: 27g (48%) of N-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3-nitro-2-pyridinamine (intermediate 33).

- e) A mixture of intermediate (33) (0.1 mol) was hydrogenated in a thiophene solution 4% (3ml) and methanol (400ml) with Pd/C 5% (4g) as a catalyst. After uptake of  $H_2$  (3eq), the catalyst was filtered off. The residue was evaporated and used without further purification. Yield: 21.8 g (100%) of  $N^2$ -[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (intermediate 34).
- f) Intermediate (34) (0.1 mol) was dissolved in DMF (250ml). Ethyl 4-isothiocyanato1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.1 mol) was added and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 20 hours. HgO (0.125 mol) and sulfur powder (few crystals) were added and the mixture was stirred at 75°C for 3hours 30minutes. The mixture was filtered over dicalite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was taken up in water/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was separated, the organic layer was dried, filtered off and evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH 95/5). The pure fractions were collected and evaporated. The residue was crystallized from DIPE and recrystallized from CH<sub>3</sub>CN. Yield: 216.6277g (55.4%) of ethyl 4-[[3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate (intermediate 35).

## 20 Example A17

25

30

Cl-CH<sub>2</sub>-C(=NH)-O-C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (0.0625 mol) was added to a mixture of N<sup>2</sup>-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-2,3-pyridinediamine (0.05 mol) in acetic acid (150mL) and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature. The mixture was warmed up to 90°C and stirred for 10 minutes at this temperature. The mixture was evaporated at <50°C. The residue was taken up in water/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> + Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. The organic layer was separated, extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered. The residue was taken up in DIPE + active charcoal and stirred for 1hour. The mixture was filtered and evaporated, Yield: 13.1 g (100%) of 2-(chloromethyl)-3-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine (intermediate 29). Preparation of the final

# compounds Example B1

a) Preparation of

$$(compound 1)$$

A mixture of intermediate (2) (0.016 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and then cooled. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with DIPE and dried. The residue was taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O, NH<sub>3</sub> and CH<sub>3</sub>OH and the mixture was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ (CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.8g of compound (1) (35%).

A mixture of intermediate (10) (0.0054 mol) in HBr 48% (50 ml) was stirred and refluxed for 5 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and crystallized from ethanol. The solvent was evaporated and the fraction was purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over RP Hyperprep (eluent: (0.5% NH<sub>4</sub>OAc in H<sub>2</sub>O)/CH<sub>3</sub>CN from 100/0 to 0/100). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.188 g of compound (308).

#### Example B2

10

A mixture of intermediate (3) (0.00622 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (10ml) and 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in 2-propanol and DIPE and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt with 2-propanol/HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. This fraction was converted into the free base and purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3). The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.65g of compound (2) (20%).

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3,5-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-9-(phenylmethoxy)-1H-[1,3]dioxepino[5,6-c]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate (0.00552 mol) in HCl 10N (200ml) was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE, filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.58g of compound (3).

## Example B3

5

10

15

A mixture of intermediate (4) (0.021 mol) and KOH (0.43 mol) in 2-propanol (100ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. H<sub>2</sub>O was added and the mixture was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 6.9g of compound (4) (quant.).

#### Example B4

A mixture of intermediate (6) (0.02 mol) in ethanol (120ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated, yielding a residue of 8g (100%). Part of this fraction (0.7g) was dissolved in ethanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3) with 2-propanol/HCl. DIPE was added. The mixture was stirred. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.65g of compound (5).

#### Example B5

Preparation of

A mixture of intermediate (9) (0.035 mol) in methanol (200ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours with Pd/C (1.5g) as a catalyst, then hydrogenation was continued at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 48 hours. After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (12g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ NH<sub>4</sub>OH 80/20/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.8g of compound (6) (34%).

## Example B6

5

10

15

20

A mixture of 6-[[2-(4-piperidinylamino)-1*H*-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-pyridine-carboxylic acid in HCl 36% (5ml) and ethanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. The solvent was evaporated. H<sub>2</sub>O, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> were added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.83g of compound (7).

#### Example B7

A mixture of compound (1) (0.003 mol), 1,1-dimethylethyl (2-bromoethyl) carbamoate (0.004 mol) and Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.004 mol) in 2-butanone (100 ml) was stirred and refluxed overnight. The reaction mixture was cooled, washed with water and the layers were separated. The organic phase was washed with a NH<sub>4</sub>Cl solution. The aqueous phase was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The combined organic layers were dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: a residue of 1.18 g of compound (8) (84%).

-61-

## Example B8

Preparation of

Reaction under N<sub>2</sub> flow. NaH (0.01 mol) was added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.01 mol) in DMF p.a. dry (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. 6-chloromethyl-2-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-4-pyrimidinol (0.01 mol) in a small amount of DMF p.a. dry was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight and then cooled. H<sub>2</sub>O (50ml) was added. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic solution was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O/HOAc, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give residue 1. The aqueous layer was taken up in HOAc and extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated, to give residue 2. Residue 1 and 2 were combined and purified by column chromatography over RP 18 BDS (eluent: NH<sub>4</sub>OAc (0.5% in H<sub>2</sub>O)/ CH<sub>3</sub>OH/CH<sub>3</sub>CN 70/15/15, 0/50/50 and 0/0/100). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: compound (9).

#### 15 Example B9

10

20

25

a) Preparation of (compound 10)

Thionyl chloride (0.03 mol) was added to a mixture of (±)-6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridinemethanol (0.015 mol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (100ml). Toluene was added and evaporated again. The residue was taken up in DMF (50ml) and then added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.015 mol) and NaH (0.06 mol) in DMF (200ml). The mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ (CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 99/1). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in petroleum ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.55g of compound (10) (20%).

A mixture of compound (10) (0.00147 mol) and NH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> gas (20g) in THF (100ml) was stirred at 125°C for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$  95/5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.43g of compound (11) (53%).

## Example B10

5

10

15

20

1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.088 mol) and then dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added to a solution of 3-chloro-6-methylpyridazine (0.08 mol) in CCl<sub>4</sub> (mol. sieves) (200ml). The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 6 hours and then filtered over dicalite. 1-Bromo-2,5-pyrrolidinedione (0.088 mol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (cat.quant.) were added again. The mixture was stirred and refluxed overnight and filtered over dicalite. The solvent was evaporated at a temperature below 40°C. The residue was dissolved in DMF (70ml) and added to a mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0214 mol) and NaH (0.0235 mol) in DMF (190ml), previously stirred at room temperature for 1 hour and at 40°C for 1 hour. The resulting mixture was stirred at 50°C overnight. The solvent was evaporated. H<sub>2</sub>O and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> were added. The organic layer was separated, dried, filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 97/3). The pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated. Yield: 1.21g of compound (12).

A mixture of compound (12) (0.0025 mol), CaO (2g) and Pd/C (1g) in 1-butanethiol (2ml) and THF (100ml) was stirred at room temperature for the weekend. The solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1g of compound (13) (88%).

## Example B11

Preparation of (cis) (compound 14) (trans) compound (15)

A mixture of intermediate (15) (0.031 mol) and N-(2-aminoethyl)acetamide (0.093 mol) in methanol (300ml) was hydrogenated at 30°C under a 3 bar pressure for 12 hours with Pd/C (5g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH<sub>3</sub>OH and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 92/8/0.5; 20-45 μm). Two pure fractions were collected and their solvents were evaporated, yielding a residue of 2.8g (22%) and 9g (71%). Parts of these fractions (0.6g; 0.8g) were crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.52g of compound (14); mp. 126°C and 0.53g of compound (15); mp. 200°C.

#### Example B12

Preparation of (compound 16)

NaBH<sub>3</sub>CN (0.048 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of N-4-piperidinyl-1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine dihydrochloride (0.032 mol) and 1,1-dimethylethyl (1,1-dimethyl-2-oxoethyl)carbamoate (0.032 mol) in methanol (100ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 hours and hydrolized at 5°C with ice water. Methanol was evaporated. The residue was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.
The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (13g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ NH<sub>4</sub>OH 95/5/0.1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 2.2g of compound (16) (14%).

#### Example B13

-64-

Preparation of

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-6-nitro-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0084 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated at 50°C with Pt/C 5% (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (1ml). After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 99/1 to 97.5/2.5). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 3.3g of compound (17) (82%).

# Example B14

5

Preparation of

A mixture of N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-pyridyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine (0.143 mol) in HCOOH (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 3
hours. The solvent was evaporated till dryness. The residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>.
The mixture was basified with Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, filtered and the filtrate was evaporated till
dryness. The residue (4.9g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel
(eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 92/8/1; 20-45 μm). The pure fractions were collected
and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanone. The
precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.8g of compound (18) (51%); mp. 146°C.

#### Example B15

Preparation of

20

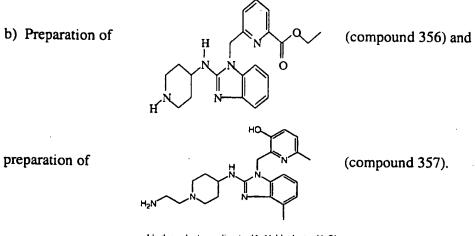
LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (0.0065 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of (±)-1,1-dimethylethyl [1-(methoxycarbonyl)-2-[4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0059 mol) in THF (30ml). The mixture was stirred at 5°C for 1 hour. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolized with ice water, filtered over celite and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (2.8g) was purified by column

chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ NH<sub>4</sub>OH 92/8/0.5; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.55g of compound (19) (56%).

## Example B16

15

(29 ml) and 2-propanol (290 ml) was stirred and refluxed for 2 hours and then cooled to 5 room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and combined with analogously obtained fraction. The precipitate was dissolved at reflux in ethanol (150 ml), then allowed to crystallize out. The precipitate was filtered off and dried (45 °C, 16 hours, then air-dried for 30 minutes). Yield: 8.9 g (70%) of compound (290). Compound (290) was converted into the free base according to art known procedures resulting in 10 compound (355).



Hydroxybutanedioate (1:1) Hydrate (1:2)

Compound (355) (0.001 mol) was added to ethanol (6 ml; absolute ethanol) and heated to reflux temperature to give an homogeneous solution (I). Solution (I) was treated with butanedioic acid (0.118 g, 0.001 mol) and resulted in immediate salt formation. The mixture was heated to reflux temperature, became homogeneous, then was allowed to

10

15

20

25

30

cool to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off, and dried (vacuum, 50 °C, 24 hours). Yield: 0.40 g (78%) of compound (356). Solution (I) was treated with hydroxybutanedioic acid (0.134 g, 0.001 mol) and the mixture was heated to reflux temperature, became homogeneous, then was allowed to cool to room temperature. The precipitate was filtered off and dried (vacuum, 50 °C, 24 hours). Yield: 0.46 g (87%) of compound (357).

Compound (290) (0.000065 mol) was dissolved in water (3 ml). The mixture was stirred and alkalized with concentrated NH<sub>4</sub>OH (400 µl, and 100 µl). CHCl<sub>3</sub> (20 ml) was added. The mixture was stirred vigorously for 10 minutes. More conc. NH<sub>4</sub>OH (100 µl) was added and the mixture was stirred vigorously for 5 minutes. The organic layer was separated, then the alkalic layer was re-extracted once with CHCl<sub>3</sub> (5 ml). The combined organic layers were washed once with a saturated aqueous NaCl solution, then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was stirred in HCOOH (20 ml) until complete dissolution (= after 2 minutes). Acetic acid anhydride (0.00213 mol) was added dropwise over 1 minute and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature. After 24 hours, more acetic acid anhydride (50 µl) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. More acetic acid anhydride (50 µl) was added to the reaction mixture. The whole was stirred for 2 hours 15 minutes on a 60 °C oil-bath, then stood over the weekend at room temperature. More acetic acid anhydride (1000 µl) was added to the reaction mixture. The whole was stirred for 30 minutes on a 60-70 °C oil-bath, then stirred overnight at room temperature. Again, the reaction mixture was stirred for 2.5 hours at 60 °C. More acetic acid anhydride (100 µl) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 45 minutes at 60 °C, then stood overnight at room temperature. Water (100 µl) was added to decompose remaining acetic acid anhydride. The solvent was evaporated (in vacuo at 60 °C). Toluene was added to the residue, then evaporated again (in vacuo, 60 °C). Xylene was added, then evaporated (in vacuo at 60 °C) to give (x). To a sample, water (3 drops) was added. NH<sub>4</sub>OH (10 μl) was added. Water (5 drops) was added and the mixture was shaken vigorously to give (y). (x) and (y) were dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 84/12/4, then purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 84/12/4). The product fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. This fraction (0.185 g) was stirred in boiling

ethanol ( $\pm$  10 ml), allowed to cool to room temperature, then Et<sub>2</sub>O (10 ml) was added and the mixture was stirred for 15 minutes. The precipitate was filtered off by suction, rinsed with Et<sub>2</sub>O, then air-dried for 3 hours, then dried further (high vacuum, 2 hours at room temperature, then air-dried overnight at room temperature). Yield: 0.153 g of compound (354).

# Example B17

5

Preparation of

# H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-(1,5-dimethyl-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.002 mol) and KOH (1g) in sec. butanol (25ml) was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour. The solvent was evaporated.

The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ (CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.57g of compound (21).

# Example B18

Preparation of

HCl (1:4); H<sub>2</sub>O (1:2)

- A mixture of 2-[2-[4-[[1-[3-(2-pyridyl)propyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-1*H*-isoindole-1,3(2*H*)-dione (0.005 mol) in HCl 6N (120ml) and HOAc (60ml) was stirred and refluxed for 30 hours and then cooled on an ice bath. A NaOH solution was added carefully dropwise until pH > 7. The mixture was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and then separated into its layers. The aqueous layer was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The combined organic layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, separated again, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up in a small amount of 2-propanol and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:4) with 2-propanol/HCl 6N. DIPE was added. The precipitate was filtered off, washed with DIPE and dried. Yield: 1.95g of compound (22) (70%).
- 25 Example B19

A mixture of intermediate (17) (0.01 mol) in hydrazine (5ml) and ethanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 30 minutes. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic solution was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (4.8g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 89/10/1; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 51.7g of compound (23) (45%); mp. 112°C.

## Example B20

Preparation of

10

15

A mixture of 3-methyl-1-[4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]-2-butanone (0.01 mol) and benzenemethanamine (0.031 mol) in methanol (50ml) was hydrogenated at 40°C under a 3 bar pressure for 24 hours with Pd/C (0.4g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite, washed with CH<sub>3</sub>OH and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 93/7/1; 15-40 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from pentane. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1g of compound (24) (21%); mp. 115°C.

## Example B21

Preparation of

Reaction under N<sub>2</sub> atmosphere. Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.250 g) was added to 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-(1*H*-benzimidazol-2-ylamino)-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.0028 mol) in DMF (10 ml). The mixture was stirred for 4 hours at room temperature. The reaction mixture was divided over 5 tubes. 2-Chloromethyl-3-chloro-5-trifluoropyridine

(0.100 g) was added to each tube and the resulting reaction mixture was stirred overnight at 50 °C. The mixture was acidified with HCl/2-propanol, then stirred for 3 hours at 90°C. The mixture was alkalized with NH<sub>3</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH and the desired compound was isolated and purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over a Prochrom D.A.C.-column with Hypersil 'BDS' HS C18 (100 g, 8 μm, 100 Å; eluent gradient: ((0.5% NH<sub>4</sub>OAc in H<sub>2</sub>O)/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/CH<sub>3</sub>CN (0 min) 70/15/15, (10.31 min) 0/50/50, (16.32 min) 0/0/100, (16.33 min-end) 70/15/15). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.020 g of compound (25).

# Example B22

20

A mixture of 1-[4-[[1-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl)methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]-amino]-1-piperidinyl]-3-methyl-2-butanone (0.0065 mol) in CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub> (300ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature with Rh/Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> (1g) as a catalyst in the presence of CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub> (3ml). After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 95/5 to 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.52g of compound (26) (55%).

(prepared analogous to the procedure described in example A10b)) in NH<sub>3</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH (100 ml) was hydrogenated for 16 hours at 50°C with Rh/C (0.5 g) as a catalyst in the presence of thiophene solution (1 ml). After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by high-performance liquid chromatography over Kromasil C18 (100 Å; eluent: NH<sub>4</sub>OAc 0.5%

H<sub>2</sub>O/CH<sub>3</sub>CN 75%, 25% CH<sub>3</sub>OH to CH<sub>3</sub>CN 100%). Two pure fraction groups were collected and their solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.165 g of compound 298.

## Example B23

Preparation of

HCl (1:3); H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1)

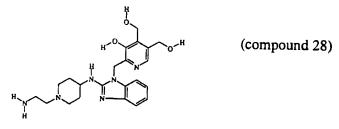
A mixture of (±)-1,1,dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[[6-methyl-3-[2-[(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]ethoxy]-2-pyridyl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]-carbamate (0.0014 mol) in 2-propanol/HCl (5ml) and 2-propanol (50ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours and taken up in H<sub>2</sub>O, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was separated. 2-Propanol/HCl (5ml) and 2-propanol (50ml) were added again. The mixture was stirred and refluxed for 1 hour and converted into the hydrochloric acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ (CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.18g of compound (27) (23%).

## 15 Example B24

5

10

Preparation of



HCl (1:1)

A mixture of 1,1-dimethylethyl [2-[4-[[1-[[3,5-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-9-(phenyl-methoxy)-1*H*-[1,3]dioxepino[5,6-c]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinyl]ethyl]carbamate (0.00213 mol) in HCl 10N (100ml) was stirred and refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was suspended in DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.9g of compound (28).

## Example B25

20

-71-

a) Preparation of

5

10

15

A mixture of intermediate (19) (0.008 mol) in methanol (150ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C (1g) as a catalyst. After uptake of  $H_2$  (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified over silica gel on a glass filter (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2$ / ( $CH_3OH/NH_3$ ) 95/5, 93/7 to 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 1.81g of compound (29) (60%).

A mixture of intermediate (24) (0.011 mol) in methanol (100ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure overnight with Pd/C (2g) as a catalyst. The catalyst was recuperated and hydrogenation was continued at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure for 2 hours with Pd/C (2g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (1 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off, washed with CH<sub>3</sub>OH and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue (4.5g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>4</sub>OH 85/15/1 and 56/40/4; 15-40 µm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from 2-propanol and diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.8g of compound (312) (40%).

according to A5c), in methanol (250 ml) was hydrogenated with Pd/C 10% (2 g) as a catalyst. After uptake of hydrogen (3 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel

(eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/(CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The product fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 4.2 g of compound (313).

#### Example B26

Preparation of

LiAlH<sub>4</sub> (0.014 mol) was added portionwise at 5°C to a solution of intermediate (20) (0.012 mol) in THF (50ml). The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and then stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. EtOAc was added. The mixture was hydrolized with ice water, filtered over celite, washed with EtOAc and the filtrate was extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was separated, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the solvent was evaporated. The residue (3g) was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>OH/ NH<sub>4</sub>OH 87/13/1; 15-40 μm). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from DIPE. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 0.75g of compound (30) (16%); mp. 85°C.

#### Example B27

20

a) Preparation of (compound 31)

A mixture of 4-[[1-(2-pyridylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidine-butanenitrile (0.01 mol) in CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub> (80ml) was hydrogenated at room temperature under a 3 bar pressure overnight with Raney Nickel (3.8g) as a catalyst. After uptake of H<sub>2</sub> (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered through celite and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was crystallized from diethyl ether. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 2.9g of compound (31) (76%); mp. 94°C.

A mixture of 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]-pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-2-furanmethanol (0.0068 mol) in CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub> (300 ml) was

hydrogenated at 20 °C with Raney Nickel (1 g) as a catalyst. After uptake of  $H_2$  (2 equiv), the catalyst was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$ ) from 95/5 to 90/10). The desired fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated.

The residue was repurified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$  95/5). The purest fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was taken up into HCl/2-propanol and DIPE was added. The resulting salt was filtered off and purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent:  $CH_2Cl_2/(CH_3OH/NH_3)$  98/2). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. Yield: 0.2 g of compound (314).

#### Example B28

10

15

20

Preparation of

H<sub>2</sub>N

OH

N

N

(compound 303)

A mixture of intermediate 21 (0.001 mol) in CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub> (100ml) was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours and at 100°C for 16 hours. The solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by column chromatography over silica gel (eluent: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>/ (CH<sub>3</sub>OH/NH<sub>3</sub>) 90/10). The pure fractions were collected and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dried. Yield: 0.11g of compound 303.

### Example B29

Preparation of (compound 315)

Iodomethane (0.00494 mol) was added at room temperature to a solution of compound (328) (0.004491 mol) in 2-propanone (17ml), and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. The residue (1.6g) was crystallized from 2-propanone. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.5g of compound (315) (64%).

-74-

# Example B30

Preparation of

Hydrochloride (1:3) Hydrate (1:1)

Compound (317) (0.0027 mol) was dissolved in ethanol (50ml). The mixture was converted into the hydrochloric acid salt (1:3) with 2-propanol/HCl. The precipitate was filtered off and dried. Yield: 1.68g of compound (316).

Tables 1 to 17 list the compounds of formula (I') and the compounds of group (I'') which were prepared according to one of the above examples.

### 10 <u>Table 1</u>

5

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	Physical data
32	Bla	1	Н	1,4-dimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
33	Bla	1	Н	1,4-dimethyl-5-[-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ]- 1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-2-yl	HCl (1:3)
34	Bla	1	Н	2-bromo-5-pyridyl	
35	Bla	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	2-pyrazinyl	
36	Bla	1	ethyl	2-pyrazinyl	
37	Bla	1	Н	2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2); mp. >160°C
38	Bla	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	2-pyridyl	
39	Bla	2	Н	2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
40	Віь	2	н	2-pyridyl	
41	Віь	3	н	2-pyridyl	HBr (1:3)
42	Bla	0	-	2-pyrimidinyl	
43	Bla	1	Н	2-pyrimidinyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
44	Bla	1	н	3,5,6-trimethyl-2-pyrazinyl	
45	Bla	1	н	3-[C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> -O-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -O]- 6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
46	Bla	1	Н	3-amino-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)

WO 01/00611

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	Physical data
47	Bla	1	Н	3-amino-2-pyridyl	
48	Bla	1	H :	3-hydroxy-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
49	Bla	1	н	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
50	Bla	1	H	3-hydroxy-6-pyridazinyl	HCl (1:2); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
51	Bla	1	Н	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
52	Bla	1	Н	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
53	Bla	1	Н	3-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
3	B2b	1	н	3-OH-4,5-(-CH <sub>2</sub> -OH) <sub>2</sub> -2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
54	Bla	1	Н	3-pyridazinyl	
55	В3	1	Н	1,5-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -1 <i>H</i> -pyrrol-2-yl	
56	Bla	1	Н	4,6-dimethyl-2-pyridyl	·
57	Bla	1	Н	4-chloro-2-pyridyl	
58	Bla	1	Н	4-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
59	Bla	1	Н	4-methyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
60	Bla	1	Н	4-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
61	Bla	1	Н	4-pyridyl	
62	Bla	1	Н	4-pyrimidinyl	
63	Bla	1	Н	5-chloro-1-methyl-1 <i>H</i> - imidazol-2-yl	
64	Bla	1	Н	5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	HCl (1:1)
65	Bla	1	Н	5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
66	Bla	1	Н	6-(-CH <sub>2</sub> -O-CH <sub>3</sub> )- 2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
67	Bla	1	Н	6-(hydroxymethyl)-2-pyridyl	
68	Bla	1	Н	6-[-CO-N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]-2-pyridyl	
69	Bla	1	Н	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:2)
70	Bla	1	н	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	·
71	Bla	1	н	6-chloro-2- pyridyl	HCl (1:2)
72	Bla	i	н	6-HOOC-2-pyridyl	
73	Bla	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	6-hydroxymethyl-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
74	Bla	1	Н	6-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
1	Bla	1	Н	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
75	Bla	1	CH₃	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
2	B2a	1	Н	6-methyl-3-[-O-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -OH]- 2-pyridyl	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
76	Bla	1	Н	6-methyl-3-[-O-( $CH_2$ ) <sub>2</sub> - $N(CH_3$ ) <sub>2</sub> ]-2-pyridyl	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	Physical data
7	В6	1	Н	6-(-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-2-pyridyl	

Table 2

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	a	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R <sup>e</sup>	Physical data
78	Bla	1	СН	H	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	•
4	В3	2	CH	Н	Н	н	-
81	B16	1	СН	Н	Н	-CH <sub>2</sub> -phenyl	-
308	B1b	1	N	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	-

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	Physical data
82	B4	CH <sub>2</sub>	5-OCH <sub>3</sub>	6-OCH₃	Н	
83	ВІЬ	NH	5-Cl	6-Cl	CH <sub>3</sub>	HBr (1:3)
84	Blb	NH	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH₃	CH₃	HBr (1:3)
85	Blb	NH	4-C1	Н	CH₃	HBr (1:3)
86	В1ь	NH	7-Cl	Н	CH₃	HBr (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
87	Blb	NH	6-NO <sub>2</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HBr (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
88	Blb	NH	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HBr (1:3)
89	Віь	NH	5-NO <sub>2</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HBr (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
90	Віь	NH	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	
91	Blb	NH	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH₃	HBr (1:3)
92	Bib	NH	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	CH <sub>3</sub>	

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R*	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	Physical data
93	Blb	NH	5-CF <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	
94	Blb	NH	6-CF <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	
95	Blb	NH	6-C1	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	
96	Blb	NH	5-Cl	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	
5	B4	NH	6-(-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	·
97	B4	NH	6-(-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
98	B4	NH	6-(-CH <sub>2</sub> -OH)	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
99	B4	NH	6-(-CH <sub>2</sub> -OH)	H	CH₃	• •
100	Bla	CH[N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]	Н	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	L	Physical data		
101	В4	4	3-piperidinyl	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)		
102	B4	3	н			
18	B14	4	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH-CHO	mp. 146°C		
103	B7	4	H <sub>3</sub> C — O — C — NH — CH <sub>2</sub> —			
104	<b>B</b> 16	4	H <sub>2</sub> N—CH <sub>2</sub> —	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 226°C		
105	B16	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -C(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 195°C		
106	B16	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(CH <sub>2</sub> OH)- NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 200°C		
23	B19	4	-CH(C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 112°C		
107	B19 ,	4	-CH(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-CH(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	(A); mp. 106°C		
108	B19	4	-CH(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-CH(C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	(B); mp. 98°C		
109	B19	4	2-aminocyclohexyl	mp. 116°C		
110	B19	4	-CH(phenylmethyl)-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 168°C		
111	B19	4	-CH[C(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> ]-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 133°C		
112	B19	4	-CH[CH <sub>2</sub> -N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 112°C		
113	B19	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-phenyl	mp. 128°C		

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	L	Physical data		
114	B19	4	-CH[CH <sub>2</sub> -(1-piperidinyl)]-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4); mp. 203°C		
115	B19	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(cyclopropyl)-NH <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 84°C		
24	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH[CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]-NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 115°C		
116	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)		
117	B20	4	-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	(B); mp. 114°C		
118	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 140°C		
119	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(cycloC <sub>6</sub> H <sub>11</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 134°C		
120	B20	4	-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-NH <sub>2</sub>	(A); HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:4); mp. 214°C		
121	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	mp. 124°C		
122	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub>	mp. 142°C		
123	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	mp. 152°C		
124	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub>	mp. 146°C		
125	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>7</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub>	mp. 136°C		
126	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -phenyl	mp. 136°C		
127	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH <sub>2</sub> -C(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. 244°C		
128	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )(C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )	(A); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. 80°C		
129	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )(C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )	(B); mp. 90°C		
130	B20	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> - (4-methoxyphenyl)	mp. 100°C		
131	Bla	4	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-(4-piperidinyl)	HCl (1:5); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. 269°C		
31	B27a	4	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>4</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 94°C		
132	B27a	4	-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 142°C		
133	B27a	3	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. 90°C		
134	B16	4	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. >250°C		
328	B7	4	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	-		
327	B7	4_	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3); mp. 180°C		

<sup>\* =</sup> position piperidinyl

<sup>(</sup>A) indicates the first isolated stereoisomeric form

<sup>(</sup>B) indicates the second isolated stereoisomeric form

Table 5

$$(CH_2)_n$$
 $(CH_2)_n$ 
 $(CH_2)_n$ 

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	а	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	Physical data
135	Bla	1	СН	6-[-COOCH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]	Н	Н	
136	Bla	1	СН	6-[-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ]	Н	Н	
137	B16	1	СН	6-СН₂ОН	Н	H	
138	B16	ı	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-C1	6-Cl	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
139	B16	1	N	3-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
20	B16	1	N	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
140	B16	1	N	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
141	B16	2	CH	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
142	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
143	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-Cl	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
144	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
145	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-NO <sub>2</sub>	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
146	B16	1	CH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-NH <sub>2</sub>	Н	HCl (1:5); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
147	B16	1	CH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-NO <sub>2</sub>	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
148	B16	1	CH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-NH <sub>2</sub>	Н	HCl (1:5); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
149	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	H	
151	B16	1	СН	6-Cl	Н	н	·
153	B16	1	СН	6-Br	Н	Н	
154	B16	1	CH	6-OH	Н	Н	
155	B16	1	СН	6-OCH₃	н	Н	
156	B16	1	CH	4-Cl	н	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
157	B16	1	СН	4-OCH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Ή	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
158	B16	1	СН	6-CH₂OCH₃	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
159	B16	1	N	5-COOC₂H₅	н	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
160	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
161	B16	1	CH	6-CH₃	6-COOC₂H₅	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	a	R <sup>a</sup>	R <sup>b</sup>	R <sup>c</sup>	Physical data
162	B16	1	CH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-СН₂ОН	н	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
163	B16	1	CH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-CF <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
164	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CF <sub>3</sub>	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
165	B16	1	CH	6-CON(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	н	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
166	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-Cl	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
22	B18	3	СН	н	Н	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
167	B27a	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	
305	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	-
306	B16	1	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-C1	Н	HCl (1:4)

Table 6

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	R <sup>d</sup>	Re	Physical data
168	B27a	СН	3-ОН	Н	Н	Н	Н	-
169	Bla		3-[-O-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> - N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	н	HCl (1:5); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
152	B16	СН	н	Н	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
170	B20	СН	3-NH <sub>2</sub>	н	н	н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
171	B20	N	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	н	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	mp. 175°C
172	B20	N	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	mp. 126°C
173	B20	N	3-CH₃	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3); mp. 208°C
174	B20	N	3-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	mp. 124°C
175	B16	N	Н	н	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	HCl (1:3)
176	B16	N	3-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH₃	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
177	B16	N	Н	Н	Н	ethyl	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
178	B16	N	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	н	CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
179	B16	СН	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
180	B16	СН	6-Cl	н	н	CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
181	B16	CH	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	R <sup>a</sup>	R <sup>b</sup>	R <sup>c</sup>	R <sup>d</sup>	Re	Physical data
182	B16	СН	3-OCH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH₃	Н	Н	Н	
183	B16	СН	6-СН₂ОН	н	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
184	B16	СН	3-[O-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> - OC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
185	B16	СН	3-OCH₂CH₂Cl	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
186	B20	СН	Н	Н	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3); mp. 170°C
187	B20	N	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	Н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O(1:3); mp. 200°C
188	B20	СН	H	н	н	CH <sub>3</sub>	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	mp. 233°C
189	B20	N	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	Н	Н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	mp. 114°C
190	B20	СН	H	н	Н	Н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	mp. 50°C
25	B21	СН	3-Cl	5-CF <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	н	
26	B22a	СН	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	
27	B23	СН	3-O-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	н	Н	HCl (1:3); H₂O(1:1)
28	B24	СН	4-CH <sub>2</sub> OH	3-OH	5-CH <sub>2</sub> C	рн  н	н	HCl (1:1)
192	B27a	СН	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	H	н	CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	
299	B16	СН	3-CN	Н	н	Н	Н	mp. 142°C
300	B20	СН	4-OCH <sub>3</sub>	3-OCH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O(1:2); mp. 210°C
301	B16	СН	3-NH-SO <sub>2</sub> -pheny	6-Cl	H	Н	н	mp. 161°C
307	B20	СН	5-OCH <sub>3</sub>	6-OCH₃	Н	Н	CH(CH₃)₂	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>2</sub> O <sub>4</sub> (2:7); mp. 90°C

$$\begin{array}{c} R^{d} \\ H_{2}N-CH-CH_{2}-N \\ \end{array}$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n} \qquad \qquad \begin{array}{c} A \\ N \\ \end{array}$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n} \qquad \qquad \begin{array}{c} A \\ N \\ \end{array}$$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	*	a	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	R <sup>d</sup>	Physical data
193	B16	2	2	CH₂	Н	Н	Н	Н	ethanedioate (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 125°C
194	B22b	1	2	NH	Cl	Н	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	
195	В22ь	1	2	NH	Н	7-CH₃	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	
196	B16	2	2	NH	Н	Н	Н	Н	ethanedioate (2:7); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 170°C

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	*	a	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R <sup>c</sup>	R <sup>d</sup>	Physical data
197	B16	1	2	N(CH <sub>3</sub> )	Н	Н	Н	Н	
198	B16	1	2	N(CH <sub>2</sub> -phenyl)	Н	н	Н	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
199	B27a	0	2	NH	H	н	H	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
200	Bla	1	2	CH₂	ОСН₃	6-ОСН3	н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1);
						*			2-propanolate (1:1)
201	Bla	1	3	NH	H	Н	б-Вг	Н	HBr (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:4)
202	B16	1	4	NH	Н	н	Н	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
296	B22b	1	2	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	6-CH₃	CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	· · ·

<sup>\* =</sup> position pyridyl

Table 8

Co. No.		L	a	R	Physical data
203	B16	4-pyrimidinyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
204	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
205	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	н	
206	B16	3-pyridazinyl	NH	н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
207	B16	4,6-dimethoxy- 2-pyrimidinyl	NH	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
208	B16	2-pyrimidinyl	NH	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
209	B16	6-methyl-2-pyridyl	CH[N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
210	В7	6-methyl-2-pyridyl	CH[N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ]	-COOC(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	
211	B25a	2-pyridiyl	NH	CH₃	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); mp. 224°C
212	B27a	2-[C(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> ]-6-OH- 4-pyrimidinyl	NH	Н	•
320	B30	2-pyridinyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
319	B27a	2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	н	
329	B16	2,5-dimethyl-4-oxazolyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
333	B16	5-methyl-3-isoxazolyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
317	B27a	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	NH	Н	mp. 115°C; H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
	B27a	4-thiazolyl	NH	Н	
326	B16	5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-	NH	H	HCl (1:3)
L		3-yl			

Co. No.		L	a	R	Physical data
332	B16	2-(hydroxymethyl)-5- oxazolyl	NH	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
331	B16	3-methyl-5-isoxazolyl	NH	н	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
324	B16	2-(dimethylamino)-4-	CH <sub>2</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1);
		thiazolyl			propanolate (1:1)
325	B27a	2-methyl-4-thiazolyl	CH <sub>2</sub>	н	
318	B27a	2-methyl-3-furanyl	NH	Н	mp. 142°C
312	В25ь	2-pyridinyl	NH	CH₂-CH₂OH	mp. 151°C
316	B30	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	NH ·	H	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O(1:1)

$$H_2N-CH_2-CH_2-N$$
 $H_2N-CH_3-CH_2-N$ 
 $H_2N-CH_3-CH_3-N$ 
 $H_3N-CH_3-CH_3-N$ 

Co. No.	Ex. No.	*	a	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	Physical data
213	B16	2	N	CH₂C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	Н	Н	HCl (1:4)
214	B16	5	N	Н	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
215	B16	5	N	CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
216	B16	2	N	CH <sub>3</sub>	5-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4)
217	B16	2	N	CH <sub>3</sub>	5-Cl	Н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
218	B16	5	N	2-propyl	2-SCH <sub>3</sub>	н	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
219	B16	5	N	C₂H₅	2-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2); 2-propanolate (1:1)
220	B16	5	N	CH <sub>3</sub>	2-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
21	B17	2	СН	CH <sub>3</sub>	5-CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
221	B27a	2	СН	CH <sub>3</sub>	5-COOC₂H₅	н	·
222	B27a	2	CH	CH <sub>3</sub>	5-COOC <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub>	4-Br	

<sup>\*</sup> position monocyclic heterocycle

Table 10

Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	b	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	Physical data
14	B11	СН	СН	Н	COCH <sub>3</sub>	Н	(cis); mp. 126
15	B11	СН	CH	Н	COCH <sub>3</sub>	н	(trans); mp. 200
223	B16	СН	СН	Н	н	Н	(trans); HCl (1:4); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. 210
29	B25a	СН	N	CH <sub>3</sub>	н	Н	
224	B25a	СН	N	CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:5); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)

5

$$H_{3}C \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} O \xrightarrow{(CHR^{a})_{n}} H_{3}C \xrightarrow{CH_{3}} O \xrightarrow{(CH_{2})_{p}} H_{N} \xrightarrow{(CH_{2})_{p}} H_{N}$$

Co. Ex. n Rª L p Physical data No. No. 225 **B**7 1 1 Н 6-chloro-2-pyridyl 8 **B7** Н 6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl 1 1 226 **B**7 2 2-pyridyl I Η 227 **B**7 ì 1 Н 5-methyl-2-pyrazinyl 228 **B7** 1 1 CH<sub>3</sub> 2-pyridyl 229 **B**7 2 1 Η 2-pyridyl 230 **B**7 1 Н 4-methyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl 1 231 **B**7 1 1 Н 3-methyl-2-pyrazinyl 232 **B**7 2 1 Н 2-pyridyl 233 **B**7 I l Н 1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl 234 **B7** 1 1 Н 4-pyrimidinyl 235 **B**7 0 1 2-pyrimidinyl 236 **B**7 1 1 Н 6-(hydroxymethyl)-2-pyridyl 237 **B**7 1 1 1,4-dimethyl-5-(-COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)-Н 1H-imidazol-2-yl

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	p	Rª	L	Physical data
238	B7	1	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	2-pyrazinyl	
239	В7	1	1	Н	3,5,6-trimethyl-2-pyrazinyl	
240	В7	1	1	Ethyl	2-pyrazinyl	
241	В7	1	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	6-methyl-2-pyrazinyl	
242	В7	1	1	Н	5-chloro-1-methyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-2-yl	
243	B7	1	1	Н	4,6-dimethyl-2-pyridyl	
244	B7	1	1	Н	6-bromo-2-pyridyl	
245	B7 -	1	1	Н	6-(-COOC₂H₅)-2-pyridyl	
246	B7	1	1	Н	1,5-dimethyl-2-pyrrolyl	
247	B7	1	1	Н	6-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
248	B7	1	1	н	4-chloro-2-pyridyl	
249	B7	1	1	Н	4-methoxy-2-pyridyl	
250	B7	1	1	Н	2-pyrimidinyl	
251	B7	1	1	н	3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
252	B7	1	1	н	6-methyl-3-(-O-C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>4</sub> -O-C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )-2-pyridyl	
253	B7	1	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	6-hydroxymethyl-2-pyridyl	
254	В7	1	1	н	6-bromo-3-pyridyl	,
9	B8	1	1	Н	2-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-6-hydroxy-4- pyrimidinyl	
255	B8	1	1	н	l-(phenylmethyl)-1H-imidazol-2-yl	
256	B8	1	1	н	1-(2-propyl)-2-(-S-CH <sub>3</sub> )-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
257	B8	1	1	CH <sub>3</sub>	6-chloro-2-pyridyl	
258	B8	1	1	н	1-ethyl-2,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
259	B8	1	1	н	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
260	B8	1	1	н	4,6-dimethoxy-2-pyrimidinyl	
261	B8	1	1	н	5-(-COOC₂H₅)-2-pyrazinyl	
262	B8	1	1	н	1,2,4-trimethyl-1 <i>H</i> -imidazol-5-yl	
10	B9a	1	1	Н	3-(-O-C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>4</sub> Cl)-6-methyl-2-pyridyl	
263	B9a	1	1	Н	6-(-CH <sub>2</sub> -O-CH <sub>3</sub> )-2-pyridyl	
11	B9b	1	1	Н	$3-[-O-C_2H_4-N(CH_3)_2]-6$ -methyl-2-pyridyl	
12	B10a	1	1	Н	6-chloro-3-pyridazinyl	
13	В10ь	1	1	н	3-pyridazinyl	
330	B7	1	ı	Н	2-methyl-4-methoxycarbonyl-5-oxazolyl	

Table 12

Co.	Ex.	R <sup>a1</sup> , R <sup>a2</sup>	R <sup>b</sup>	R <sup>c</sup>	a	R <sup>d</sup>	Physical
No.	No.		<del> </del>				data
264	B7	Н, Н	OCH <sub>3</sub>	6-OCH₃	CH₂	н	
265	B7	H, H	Н	Н	N(CH <sub>3</sub> )	н	
266	B7	H, H	H	Н	N(CH <sub>2</sub> -C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )	н	
267	B7	Н, Н	Cl	6-C1	NH	CH₃	
268	В7	Н, Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	NH	СН₃	
269	В7	H, H	Н	4-C1	NH	СН₃	
270	В7	H, H	Н	7-Cl	NH	CH₃	
271	В7	Н, Н	Н	6-NO₂	NH	CH₃	
272	В7	Н, Н	NO <sub>2</sub>	н	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
273	B7	Н, Н	H	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	NH	CH₃	
274	В7	Н, Н	H	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
275	В7	Н, Н		6-ethoxy- carbonyl	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
276	В7	Н, Н		6-hydroxy- methyl	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
277	В7	Н, Н	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
278	B7	н, н	Н	6-CF₃	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
279	B7	н, н	Н	Н	NH	-CO-N(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	
280	В7	H, H	Cl	н	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
16	B12	CH <sub>3</sub> , CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	NH	Н	
17	B13	H, H	-NH <sub>2</sub>	н	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
281	B13	H, H	Н	6-NH <sub>2</sub>	NH	CH <sub>3</sub>	
19	B15	-СН₂ОН, Н	Н	Н	NH	H	

Table 13

$$L = N \xrightarrow{(CH_2)_p} (CH_2)_{\overline{n}} - (NH)_{\overline{m}} \longrightarrow N \xrightarrow{a}$$

Co. No.	Ex. No.	n	m	0	p	a	Rª	Rb	L	Physical data
6	B5	1	0	2	1	СН	Н	Н	Н	·
283	B27a	1	0	1	1	N	н	Н	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4), H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); 2-propanolate (1:1)
284	B27a	1	1	1	1	N	н	н	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:1)
285	B27a	1	1	0	2	СН	Н	н	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4), H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1); mp. 205°C
286	B4	1	1	0	2	CH	н	н	Н	
30	B26	0	1	1	1	CH	СН₃	Н	-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> )-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	mp. 85°C

Ra. Co. Ex. L Physical data No. No. 288 B25a Н  $-NH-(CH_2)_2-NH_2$ 289 **B**4 Н ΝH 309 B19 Н -NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-NH<sub>2</sub> HCl (1:3); H<sub>2</sub>O (1:2)  $\hbox{-NH-CH(CH$_3$)-(CH$_2$)$_2-NH-(CH$_2$)$_2-NH$_2}$ 347 B16 Н HCl(1:4); 2-propanolate (1:1) 345 B19 Н -N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-NH<sub>2</sub> HCl (1:4); H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1) 346 B19 Н HCl (1:4); H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1) NH<sub>2</sub>

Co. No.	Ex. No.	R <sub>a</sub> .	L	Physical data
341	B25a	Н	NH_NH <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:3); H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
313	B25c	ОН	-NHCH2CH(OH)CH2NH2	

Table 15

$$R^{a}$$
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{b}$ 
 $R^{c}$ 
 $R^{c}$ 
 $R^{d}$ 
 $R^{d}$ 
 $R^{d}$ 

			_						
Co. No.	Ex. No.	a	n	Rª	R <sup>b</sup>	R°	R <sup>d</sup>	R <sup>f</sup>	Physical data
290	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:4)
291	В22ь	N	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH₃	Н	CH-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	1
292	В22ь	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH₃	Н	CH <sub>3</sub>	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:3)
293	В22ь	CH	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	
195	В22ь	СН	0	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	H	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	CH-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	-
303	B28	CH	1	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	H	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	ОН	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
304	1	CH	0	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	H	6-CH₃	н	CH-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	-
342	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-Cl	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	HCl (1:4),
1									2-propanolate (1:1)
348	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-Br	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	HCl (1:4)
351	В22ь	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	CH-(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
340	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	Н	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
344	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	4-CH <sub>3</sub>	6-C1	Н	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:4)
349	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	5-(4-fluoro-	н	Н	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
						benzoyl)			
350	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH₃	6-(4-fluoro-	н	Н	HCl (1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O (1:2)
						benzoyl)			,, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
355	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	н	
356	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	н	н	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>6</sub> O <sub>4</sub> (1:1);H <sub>2</sub> O(1:1)
357	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н	i	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>6</sub> O <sub>5</sub> (1:1);H <sub>2</sub> O(1:2)
353	B16	СН	0	3-OH	6-CH <sub>3</sub>	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	Н		HCl(1:4);H <sub>2</sub> O(1:5)

Table 16

$$L-N \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow R^{a}$$

				N' t			
Co. No.		a	b	Rª	L	P	Physical data
295	B22b	СН	СН	5-Cl	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>3</sub> C N	
297	В22ь	СН	СН	5-Cl	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	ĊH <sub>3</sub> H <sub>3</sub> C  N  CH <sub>3</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1)
298	В22ь	СН	СН	Н	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )-CH(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>	H <sub>3</sub> C N	
310	В1Ь	СН	N	Н	Н	HO CH <sub>3</sub>	HBr (1:3).H <sub>2</sub> O (1:1).C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>6</sub> O (1:1)
302	Bla	СН	СН	5-C1	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	·
321	B27a	N	СН	Н	-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	2,4-dimethyl-5-	
339	B8	Z	СН	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	-C(=O)-O-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub>	oxazolyl HO N	
336	В9ъ	СН	СН	Н	-C(=O)-O-C(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	CH <sub>3</sub>	
337	B25a	СН	СН	н	-C(=O)-O-CH <sub>2</sub> -CH <sub>3</sub>	H <sub>2</sub> N	mp. 171°C
352	В7	СН	СН	7-CH₃	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> -NH- C(=O)OC(CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>3</sub>	HO_CH <sub>3</sub>	
354	B16	СН	СН	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> -NH-CH=O	HO CH <sub>1</sub>	.HCl(1:4)

Table 17

Co. No.	I	a	ь	С	Rª	R⁵	R°	L	Physical data
343	В1ь	СН	NH	СН	Н	5-Br	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-	HBr (1:3)
		l						2-pyridinyl	(,
338	В1ь	CH	NH	СН	н	Н	7-CH <sub>3</sub>	3-hydroxy-6-methyl-	
					СН(СН <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>			2-pyridinyl	
335	B20	Ν	NH	CH	CH <sub>2</sub> CHNH <sub>2</sub>	Н	Н	2-pyridinyl	mp. 198°C
334	B27a	Ν	NH	CH	(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	Н	Н	2-pyridinyl	mp. 186
322	B27a	N	CH₂	N	(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	Н	Н	2-methyl-5-oxazolyl	•
314	В27ь	CH	CH₂	N	-(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub>	н	н	5-methoxymethyl-2-	
								furanyl	

## 5 <u>C. Pharmacological example</u>

10

15

20

Example C1: In vitro screening for activity against Respiratory Syncytial Virus.

The percent protection against extended to the percent protection agains

The percent protection against cytopathology caused by viruses (antiviral activity or  $IC_{50}$ ) achieved by tested compounds and their cytotoxicity ( $CC_{50}$ ) were both calculated from dose-response curves. The selectivity of the antiviral effect is represented by the selectivity index (SI), calculated by dividing the  $CC_{50}$  (cytotoxic dose for 50% of the cells) by the  $IC_{50}$  (antiviral activity for 50 % of the cells).

Automated tetrazolium-based colorimetric assays were used for determination of IC<sub>50</sub> and CC<sub>50</sub> of test compounds. Flat-bottom, 96-well plastic microtiter trays were filled with 180  $\mu$ l of Eagle's Basal Medium, supplemented with 5 % FCS (0% for FLU) and 20 mM Hepes buffer. Subsequently, stock solutions (7.8 x final test concentration) of compounds were added in 45  $\mu$ l volumes to a series of triplicate wells so as to allow simultaneous evaluation of their effects on virus- and mock-infected cells. Five five-fold dilutions were made directly in the microtiter trays using a robot system. Untreated virus controls, and HeLa cell controls were included in each test. Approximately 100 TCID50 of Respiratory Syncytial Virus was added to two of the three rows in a volume of 50  $\mu$ l. The same volume of medium was added to the third row to measure the cytotoxicity of the compounds at the same concentrations as those used to measure the antiviral activity. After two hours of incubation, a suspension (4 x 10<sup>5</sup> cells/ml) of HeLa

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

cells was added to all wells in a volume of 50µl. The cultures were incubated at 37°C in a 5% CO<sub>2</sub> atmosphere. Seven days after infection the cytotoxicity and the antiviral activity was examined spectrophotometrically. To each well of the microtiter tray, 25 µl of a solution of MTT (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide) was added. The trays were further incubated at 37°C for 2 hours, after which the medium was removed from each cup. Solubilization of the formazan crystals was achieved by adding 100 µl 2-propanol. Complete dissolution of the formazan crystals were obtained after the trays have been placed on a plate shaker for 10 min. Finally, the absorbances were read in an eight-channel computer-controlled photometer (Multiskan MCC, Flow Laboratories) at two wavelengths (540 and 690 nm). The absorbance measured at 690 nm was automatically subtracted from the absorbance at 540 nm, so as to eliminate the effects of non-specific absorption.

Particular IC<sub>50</sub>, CC<sub>50</sub> and SI values are listed in Table 18 hereinbelow.

#### 15 <u>Table 18</u>

5

10

Co. No.	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	CC <sub>50</sub> (µM)	SI
290	0.00013	>0.010	>79
292	0.00032	63.85	199526
351	0.00063	50.04	79433
297	0.00251	>99.93	>39811
296	0.00631	19.95	3162
27	0.0126	>100.08	>7943
192	0.0631	63.1	1000
144	0.1259	50.11	398
222	0.5012	39.59	79
142	1.2589	40.28	32
145	2.5119	>50.24	>20

#### Claims

10

15

20

1. Use of a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections, wherein the compound is a compound of formula

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} R^1 \\ Q & A^2 \\ N & A^3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ A & A^3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ A & A^3 \end{pmatrix}$$

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

-a<sup>1</sup>=a<sup>2</sup>-a<sup>3</sup>=a<sup>4</sup>- represents a bivalent radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH-

(a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH-

(a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH-

(a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH-

(a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N-

(a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy,

C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono- or di(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, or a radical of formula

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR $^{5a}$ R $^{5b}$ , =CH $_2$ , =CH-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C $_{1-6}$ alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

wherein Alk is C<sub>1.6</sub>alkanediyl:

Y<sup>1</sup> is a bivalent radical of formula  $-NR^2$ - or  $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -;  $X^1$  is  $NR^4$ , S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, O, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>), CH(OH), CH(CH<sub>3</sub>),  $CH(OCH_3)$ , CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub>;  $X^2$  is a direct bond, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), NR<sup>4</sup>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, NR<sup>4</sup>-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R<sup>3</sup>; with the proviso that when R<sup>3</sup> is hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, then R<sup>3</sup> can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom:

G is a direct bond or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkanedivl:

- R<sup>1</sup> is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, thienyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each
- thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, and isothiazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, aryl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or
- di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-;

each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;

wherein s is 4 or 5:

- R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, formyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonyl, Hetcarbonyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-5</sub>alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
- R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy; R<sup>4</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl;
  - $R^{5a}$ ,  $R^{5b}$ ,  $R^{5c}$  and  $R^{5d}$  each independently are hydrogen or  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl; or  $R^{5a}$  and  $R^{5b}$ , or  $R^{5c}$  and  $R^{5d}$  taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>s</sub>-
- R<sup>6</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonyl or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy,  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, hydroxy $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, polyhalo $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, and  $C_{1-6}$ alkyloxy;

Het is pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl.

## 5

## 2. A compound of formula (I')

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ N & & & a^2 \end{bmatrix}_3 \qquad (I')$$

a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex or stereochemically isomeric form thereof, wherein

 $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  represents a radical of formula

-CH=CH-CH=CH-

(a-1);

-N=CH-CH=CH-

(a-2);

-CH=N-CH=CH-

(a-3);

-CH=CH-N=CH-

(a-4); or

-CH=CH-CH=N-

(a-5);

wherein each hydrogen atom in the radicals (a-1), (a-2), (a-3), (a-4) and (a-5) may optionally be replaced by halo, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, nitro, amino, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, carboxyl, aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono- or

di(C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, or a radical of formula

20

25

15

wherein =Z is =O, =CH-C(=O)-NR $^{5a}$ R $^{5b}$ , =CH $_2$ , =CH-C $_1$ -6alkyl, =N-OH or =N-O-C $_1$ -6alkyl;

Q is a radical of formula

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-95-

$$y^1$$
 $CH-X^1$ 
 $Y^1$ 
 $CH-X^2$ 
 $CH-X^1$ 
 $CH-X^2$ 
 $CH-X^2$ 

wherein Alk is C<sub>1-6</sub>alkanediyl;

5

Y<sup>1</sup> is a bivalent radical of formula  $-NR^2$ - or  $-CH(NR^2R^4)$ -; X<sup>1</sup> is  $NR^4$ , S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, O, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>), CH(OH), CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), CH(OCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(SCH<sub>3</sub>), CH(NR<sup>5a</sup>R<sup>5b</sup>), CH<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>4</sup> or NR<sup>4</sup>-CH<sub>2</sub>; X<sup>2</sup> is a direct bond, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), NR<sup>4</sup>, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl-NR<sup>4</sup>, NR<sup>4</sup>-C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl; t is 2, 3, 4 or 5; u is 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5; v is 2 or 3; and

whereby each hydrogen atom in Alk and the carbocycles and the heterocycles defined in radicals (b-3), (b-4), (b-5), (b-6), (b-7) and (b-8) may optionally be replaced by R<sup>3</sup>; with the proviso that when R<sup>3</sup> is hydroxy or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, then R<sup>3</sup> can not replace a hydrogen atom in the α position relative to a nitrogen atom;

G is a direct bond or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkanediyl;

- R<sup>1</sup> is a monocyclic heterocycle selected from pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and each heterocycle may optionally be substituted with 1 or where possible more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, amino, cyano, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)aminoC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, aryl-SO<sub>2</sub>-NR<sup>5c</sup>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl, -C(=O)-NR<sup>5c</sup>R<sup>5d</sup>, HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, halo(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>- and mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-; each n independently is 1, 2, 3 or 4;
- R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, formyl, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub>, or C<sub>1-10</sub>alkyl substituted with N(R<sup>6</sup>)<sub>2</sub> and optionally with a second, third or fourth substituent selected from amino, hydroxy, C<sub>3-7</sub>cycloalkyl, C<sub>2-5</sub>alkanediyl, piperidinyl, mono-or di(C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl)amino, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonylamino, aryl and aryloxy;
- R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy; R<sup>4</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl or arylC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; R<sup>5a</sup>, R<sup>5b</sup>, R<sup>5c</sup> and R<sup>5d</sup> each independently are hydrogen or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl; or

 $R^{5a}$  and  $R^{5b}$ , or  $R^{5c}$  and  $R^{5d}$  taken together form a bivalent radical of formula -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>s</sub>-wherein s is 4 or 5;

R<sup>6</sup> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub>alkyl, formyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkylcarbonyl or C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxycarbonyl;

aryl is phenyl or phenyl substituted with 1 or more, such as 2, 3 or 4, substituents selected from halo, hydroxy, C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, polyhaloC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, and C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy;

provided that when G is methylene, and  $R^1$  is 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 6-methyl-2-pyridyl, 2-pyrazinyl or 5-methyl-imidazol-4-yl, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - is -CH=CH-CH=CH- or -N=CH-CH=CH-, then Q is other than

$$H_{1} = H_{2} = H_{2$$

3. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is 
$$R^2 - N - X^1$$

wherein  $X^1$  is  $NR^4$ , O, S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>) or CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), then  $R^1$  is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl.

4. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is 
$$R^2 - N$$

wherein X<sup>1</sup> is NR<sup>4</sup>, O, S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>) or CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), then R<sup>1</sup> is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, pyridyl substituted with 1 or 2 C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyloxy, pyrazinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with C<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl.

5. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is 
$$R^2 - N$$

wherein  $X^1$  is  $NR^4$ , O, S, S(=O), S(=O)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>, C(=O), C(=CH<sub>2</sub>) or CH(CH<sub>3</sub>), then  $R^1$  is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl.

5 6. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply: when Q is  $R^2 - N - CH_2$ 

then  $R^1$  is other than pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl and imidazolyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl.

7. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the following restrictions apply:

when Q is R<sup>2</sup>—N

N—X<sup>2</sup>—

wherein  $X^2$  is  $CH_2$  or a direct bond, then  $R^1$  is other than pyridyl, pyridyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, imidazolyl substituted with  $C_{1-6}$ alkyl.

8. A compound as claimed in claim 2 wherein the compound is selected from (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-3-

pyridinol; ( $\pm$ )-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(1,4-dimethyl-IH-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; ( $\pm$ )-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-IH-benzimidazol-2-amine; ( $\pm$ )-2-[[2-[(3-amino-2-hydroxypropyl)amino]-IH-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; N-[1-

25 (2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-ethoxyethoxy)-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-chloro-1-[(2-chloro-1,4-dimethyl-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl]-1H-

benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-6-methyl-1-[(6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; (±)-N-[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3,5,6-trimethylpyrazinyl)methyl]-1H-

benzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[[3-(2-chloroethoxy)-

6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride dihydrate; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[3-amino-2pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-5 piperidinyl]amino]-7-methyl-3*H*-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-3-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3pyridinol; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-chloro-4-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride 2-propanolate (1:1);  $(\pm)$ -2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminopropyl)-4-10 piperidinyl]amino]-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride trihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-7methyl-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-6-bromo-4-methyl-1Hbenzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride; 2-[[2-[[1-(2-15 aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3pyridinol tetrahydrochloride monohydrate; (±)-2-[[2-[[1-(2-amino-3methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3pyridinol; (±)-N-[1-(2-amino-3-methylbutyl)-4-piperidinyl]-4-methyl-1-[(6-20 methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine; a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof.

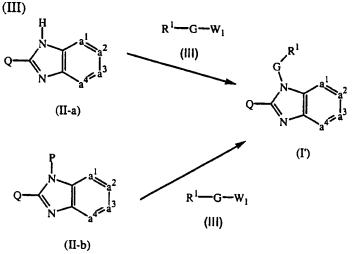
## 9. A compound selected from

2-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]amino]-5-chloro-7-methyl-1H-25 benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-6-methyl-3-pyridinol tetrahydrochloride tetrahydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,4-dimethyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2,5-dimethyl-4oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[3-[[5-(methoxymethyl)-2-furanyl]methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]methyl]-30 1-piperidineetanamine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-methyl-3isoxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-amine monohydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2methyl-5-oxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride 35 monohydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-3-[(2,4-dimethyl-5oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-amine; 4-[[3-[(2-methyl-5-

- oxazolyl)methyl]-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperazineethanamine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-(4-thiazolylmethyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2amine; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(5-phenyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3yl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride; 5-[[2-[[1-(2-aminoethyl)-5 4-piperidinyl]amino-IH-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl-2-oxazolemethanol tetrahydrochloride dihydrate; N-[1-(2-aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(3-methyl-5isoxazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-amine trihydrochloride monohydrate; 4-[[1-[[2-(dimethylamino)-4-thiazolyl]methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1piperidineethanamine tetrahydrochloride monohydrate 2-propanolate (1:1); ethyl 10 5-[[2-[[1-[2-[[(1,1-dimethylethoxy)carbonyl]amino]ethyl]-4-piperidinyl]amino]-1H-benzimidazol-1-yl]methyl]-2-methyl-4-oxazolecarboxylate; 4-[[1-[(2-methyl-4thiazolyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]methyl]-1-piperidineethanamine; N-[1-(2aminoethyl)-4-piperidinyl]-1-[(2-methyl-3-furanyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2amine; ethyl 4-[[3-[(3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl)methyl]-7-methyl-3H-15 imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; 1,1-dimethylethyl 4-[[1-[[3-[2-(dimethylamino)ethoxy]-6-methyl-2-pyridinyl]methyl]-1Hbenzimidazol-2-yl]amino-1-piperidinecarboxylate; ethyl 4-[[1-[(3-amino-2pyridinyl)methyl]-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]amino]-1-piperidinecarboxylate; N-[1-(6methyl-2-pyridinyl)-1H-benzimidazol-2-yl]-1-(3-pyridinylcarbonyl)-4-20 piperidinamine; a prodrug, N-oxide, addition salt, quaternary amine, metal complex and stereochemically isomeric form thereof.
- 25 10. A compound as claimed in anyone of claims 2 to 9 for use as a medicine.
  - 11. Use of a compound as claimed in claim 9 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of viral infections.
- 12. Use of a compound according to claim 1 or 11 wherein said viral infection is a respiratory syncytial virus infection.
  - 13. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9.
  - 14. A process of preparing a composition as claimed in claim 13 <u>characterized in that</u> a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier is intimately mixed with a therapeutically effective amount of a compound as claimed in claim 2 or claim 9.

15

- 15. A process of preparing a compound as claimed in claim 2, characterized by
- a) reacting an intermediate of formula (II-a) or (II-b) with an intermediate of formula



with  $R^1$ , G, Q and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and  $W_1$  being a suitable leaving group, in the presence of a suitable base and in a suitable reaction-inert solvent;

10 b) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (IV)

$$P = Q_1 = \begin{bmatrix} R^1 \\ N \\ A \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} A^2 \\ A \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix}$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, H-Q<sub>1</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  or at least one  $R^6$  substituent is hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

c) deprotecting and reducing an intermediate of formula (IV-a)

$$P \longrightarrow Q_{1a}(CH=CH) \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow A^{1} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{1} \longrightarrow A^{2} \longrightarrow A^{2$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, H-Q<sub>1</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  or at least one  $R^6$  substituent is hydrogen,

20

 $Q_{1a}(CH=CH)$  being defined as  $Q_1$  provided that  $Q_1$  comprises an unsaturated bond, and P being a protective group

d) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (V)

with R<sup>1</sup>, G, and -a<sup>1</sup>=a<sup>2</sup>-a<sup>3</sup>=a<sup>4</sup>- defined as in claim 2, and H<sub>2</sub>N-Q<sub>2</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both R<sup>6</sup> substituents are hydrogen or R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are both hydrogen;

e) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VI)

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  defined as in claim 2, and  $H_2N-Q_2$  being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both  $R^6$  substituents are hydrogen or  $R^2$  and  $R^4$  are both hydrogen, and P being a protective group;

15 f) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (VII) or (VIII)

P-Q<sub>1</sub>· (OP)
$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{1} \\
Q_{1}^{1} \\
Q_{2}^{1} \\
Q_{2}^{1} \\
Q_{2}^{1} \\
Q_{3}^{1}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{1} \\
Q_{1}^{2} \\
Q_{2}^{1} \\
Q_{2}^{1} \\
Q_{3}^{1}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R^{1} \\
Q_{3}^{1}
\end{array}$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  defined as in claim 2, H-Q<sub>1</sub>·(OH) being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  or at least one  $R^6$  substituent is hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, H<sub>2</sub>N-Q<sub>2</sub>·(OH) being defined as Q

10

15

20

according to claim 2 provided that both R<sup>6</sup> substituents are hydrogen or R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are both hydrogen and provided that Q comprises a hydroxy moiety, and P being a protective group;

g) amination of an intermediate of formula (IX)

$$(O \Longrightarrow) Q_3 \xrightarrow{R^1} a_{3}^{1} \xrightarrow{a^1 = a^2} amination$$
 $H_2N = Q_3H \xrightarrow{N} a_{3}^{1} a_{3}^{2}$ 
 $(IX)$ 
 $(I = a-1-2)$ 

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  defined as in claim 2, and  $H_2N-Q_3H$  being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that both  $R^6$  substituents are hydrogen or  $R^2$  and  $R^4$  are both hydrogen, and the carbon adjacent to the nitrogen carrying the  $R^6$ , or  $R^2$  and  $R^4$  substituents contains at least one hydrogen, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

h) reducing an intermediate of formula (X)

NC-Q<sub>4</sub>

$$\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a_4=a_3}{\bigvee}}$$
 $\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a_4=a_3}{\bigvee}}$ 
reduction
 $\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a_4=a_3}{\bigvee}}$ 
 $\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a_4=a_3}{\bigvee}}$ 
 $\stackrel{R^1}{\underset{a_4=a_3}{\bigvee}}$ 

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and  $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$  being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a  $-CH_2-NH_2$  moiety, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

i) reducing an intermediate of formula (X-a)

NC-Q<sub>4</sub>

$$= \begin{pmatrix} R^{1} - C_{1-6}alkyl - OH \\ Q - C_{1-6}a$$

with G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2,  $H_2N-CH_2-Q_4$  being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a  $-CH_2-NH_2$  moiety, and  $R^{1'}$  being defined as  $R^{1'}$  according to claim 2 provided that it comprises at least one substituent, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent and suitable solvent;

25 j) amination of an intermediate of formula (XI)

WO 01/00611 PCT/EP00/05676

-103-

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  defined as in claim 2, and  $H_2N$ -CH<sub>2</sub>-CHOH-CH<sub>2</sub>-Q<sub>4</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that Q comprises a CH<sub>2</sub>-CHOH-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH<sub>2</sub> moiety, in the presence of a suitable amination reagent;

k) reacting an intermediate of formula (XII) with formic acid, formamide and ammonia

5

10

15

20

$$C_{1-4}alkyl-C-CH_{2}-Q_{1}-N$$

$$A_{1}A_{2}A_{3}$$

$$(XII)$$

$$(XII)$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and H-C(=0)- $Q_1$  being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  or at least one  $R^6$  substituent is formyl;

 amination of an intermediate of formula (XIII) by reaction with an intermediate of formula (XIV)

$$(O=)Q_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2} A^{3} + R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} A^{2a} \xrightarrow{amination} R^{2a} \xrightarrow{NH_{2}} HQ_{5} \xrightarrow{R^{1}} A^{2a} A^{3}$$

$$(XIII) \qquad (XIV)$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and  $R^{2a}$ -NH-HQ<sub>5</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  is other than hydrogen and is represented by  $R^{2a}$ ,  $R^4$  is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the  $R^2$  and  $R^4$  substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, in the presence of a suitable reducing agent;

m) reducing an intermediate of formula (XV)

15

$$(R^{6})_{2}N-(C_{1}-\text{palkyl})-NH-HQ_{5}-N$$

$$C(=O)OC_{1}-\text{palkyl}$$

$$(XV)$$

$$R^{1}$$

$$a^{1}$$

$$a^{2}$$

$$R^{6})_{2}N-(C_{1}-\text{palkyl})-NH-HQ_{5}$$

$$CH_{2}OH$$

$$(I'-c-1)$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ - defined as in claim 2, and  $(R^6)_2N$ -[( $C_{1-9}alkyl$ )CH<sub>2</sub>OH]-NH-HQ<sub>5</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  is other than hydrogen and is represented by  $C_{1-10}alkyl$  substituted with  $N(R_6)_2$  and with hydroxy, and the carbon atom carrying the hydroxy, carries also two hydrogen atoms, and provided that  $R^4$  is hydrogen, and the carbon atom adjacent to the nitrogen atom carrying the  $R^2$  and  $R^4$  substituents, carries also at least one hydrogen atom, with a suitable reducing agent;

n) deprotecting an intermediate of formula (XVI), (XVI-a) or (XVI-b)

with G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  defined as in claim 2, and H-Q<sub>1</sub> being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that  $R^2$  or at least one  $R^6$  substituent is hydrogen,

and R<sup>1a</sup>-(A-O-H)<sub>w</sub>, R<sup>1a'</sup>-(A-O-H)<sub>2</sub> and R<sup>1a''</sup>-(A-O-H)<sub>3</sub> being defined as R<sup>1</sup> according to claim 2 provided that R<sup>1</sup> is substituted with hydroxy, hydroxyC<sub>1-6</sub>alkyl, or HO(-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-O)<sub>n</sub>-, with w being an integer from 1 to 4 and P or P<sub>1</sub> being a suitable protecting group, with a suitable acid.

5

# o) amination of an intermediate of formula (XVII)

$$C_{1-4}alky! - O - C-Alk - X^{1} - N - Alk - X^{1} - N - Alk - X^{1} -$$

with  $R^1$ , G,  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$ -, Alk,  $X^1$   $R^2$  and  $R^4$  defined as in claim 2, in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

10

# p) amination of an intermediate of formula (XIX)

H—C—C<sub>1-3</sub>alkyl—NR<sup>4</sup>

$$(XIX)$$

$$Q_6N$$

$$(I'-p)$$

$$Q_{1-3}$$

$$Q_{1-3}$$

$$Q_{2-1}$$

$$Q_{3-1}$$

$$Q_{4-1}$$

$$Q_{1-2}$$

$$Q_{1-3}$$

$$Q_{1-2}$$

$$Q_{1-3}$$

$$Q_{1-2}$$

$$Q_{1-3}$$

$$Q_{1-2}$$

$$Q_{1-3}$$

with  $R^1$ , G, and  $-a^1=a^2-a^3=a^4$  defined as in claim 2, and  $Q_6N$ - $CH_2$ - $C_{1-3}$ alkyl- $NR^4$  being defined as Q according to claim 2 provided that in the definition of Q,  $X^2$  is  $C_{2-4}$ alkyl- $NR^4$ , in the presence of a suitable amination agent;

15

and, if desired, converting compounds of formula (I') into each other following art-known transformations, and further, if desired, converting the compounds of formula (I'), into a therapeutically active non-toxic acid addition salt by treatment with an acid, or into a therapeutically active non-toxic base addition salt by treatment with a base, or conversely, converting the acid addition salt form into the free base by treatment with alkali, or converting the base addition salt into the free acid by treatment with acid; and, if desired, preparing stereochemically isomeric forms, metal complexes, quaternary amines or N-oxide forms thereof.

20

- 16. A product containing (a) a compound as defined in claim 2 or 9, and (b) another antiviral compound, as a combined preparation for simultaneous, separate or sequential use in the treatment or the prevention of viral infections.
- 5 17. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and as active ingredients (a) a compound as defined in claim 2 or 9, and (b) another antiviral compound.

Inter and Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 7 C07D401/06 C07D471/04 C07D401/14 C07D413/14 C07D417/14
C07D405/14 A61K31/501 A61K31/4439 A61K31/454 A61K31/4184
A61K31/4188 A61P31/14 //(C07D471/04,235:00,221:00)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

#### B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

CHEM ABS Data, EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT					
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.			
Y	EP 0 099 139 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 25 January 1984 (1984-01-25) cited in the application claims	1-17			
Y	EP 0 144 101 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 12 June 1985 (1985-06-12) cited in the application claims	1-17			
Y	EP 0 145 037 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 19 June 1985 (1985-06-19) cited in the application claims	1-17			
	,				

X Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.	Patent family members are listed in annex.
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filling date  "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)  "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	"T" later document published after the international filling date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone  "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.  "8" document member of the same patent family
Date of the actual completion of the international search  26 September 2000	Date of mailing of the international search report  13/10/2000
Name and mailing address of the ISA  European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo ni, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Authorized officer Allard, M

1

Inter onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

C.(Continu	Stine) DOCUMENTO CONCIDENCE	PCT/EP 00/05676
Category *	ation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT  Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Datament to the state of
		Relevant to daim No.
Y	EP 0 151 824 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 21 August 1985 (1985-08-21) cited in the application claims	1-17
Υ	EP 0 151 826 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 21 August 1985 (1985-08-21) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 232 937 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 19 August 1987 (1987-08-19) cited in the application claims	1-17
Υ	EP 0 295 742 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 21 December 1988 (1988-12-21) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 297 661 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 4 January 1989 (1989-01-04) cited in the application claims	1-17
Υ	EP 0 307 014 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 15 March 1989 (1989-03-15) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 393 738 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 24 October 1990 (1990-10-24) claims	1-17
Y	EP 0 005 318 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 14 November 1979 (1979-11-14) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	WO 92 01697 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 6 February 1992 (1992-02-06) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	WO 92 01687 A (JANSSEN PHARMACEUTICA NV) 6 February 1992 (1992-02-06) cited in the application claims	1-17
Y	WO 98 10764 A (UCB, S.A.) 19 March 1998 (1998-03-19) claims	1-17
	<b>-/</b>	

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

Intel onal Application No
PCT/EP 00/05676

0.6		PCT/EP 00/05676
	etion) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT	
Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Υ	EP 0 058 146 A (UCB, S.A.) 18 August 1982 (1982-08-18) claims	1-17
A	R.R. TIDWELL ET AL: "Aromatic amidines: comparison of their ability to block respiratory syncytial virus induced cell fusion and to inhibit plasmin, urokinase, thrombin, and trypsin"  JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 26, no. 2, 1983, pages 294-298, XP002123605  ISSN: 0022-2623 the whole document	
A	CHIBA T ET AL: "Inhibitory effect of pyridobenzazoles on virus replication in vitro" BIOLOGICAL & PHARMACEUTICAL BULLETIN, vol. 18, no. 8, August 1995 (1995-08), pages 1081-3, XP002148491 the whole document	
-		

information on patent family members

Inter >nal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0099139	Α	25-01-1984	US	4556660 A	03-12-1985
			AT	25459 T	15-02-1987
			AU	563363 B	09-07-1987
•			AU	1672883 A	17-01-1985
			BG	40655 A	15-01-1987
			CA	1266267 A	27-02-1990
			DE	3369784 D	19-03-1987
			DK	318583 A	13-01-1984
			ES	524029 D	16-11-1985
			ES	8602768 A	16-03-1986
			FI GR	832521 A,B,	13-01-1984
			HU	81366 A	11-12-1984
			IE	203550 B 56077 B	28-08-1991
			IL	69198 A	10-04-1991
			ÎN	156065 A	30-01-1987
			JP	59021680 A	04-05-1985 03-02-1984
			KR	8701510 B	20-08-1987
			NO	832524 A,B,	13-01-1984
			NZ	204759 A	13-12-1985
			PH	22009 A	02-05-1988
			PL	242970 A	13-08-1985
			PT	77012 A,B	01-08-1983
			RO	87533 A	31-10-1985
			SU	1297728 A	15-03-1987
			US	4820822 A	11-04-1989
			US	RE33833 E	25-02-1992
			ZA ZW	8305044 A 15583 A	27-02-1985
			US	4760074 A	30-01-1983 26-07-1988
EP 0144101	A	12-06-1985	AT	60769 T	15-02-1991
			AU	579121 B	17-11-1988
			AU	3602884 A	06-06-1985
			BG	43188 A	15-04-1988
			CA	1257258 A	11-07-1989
			CA	1330081 A	07-06-1994
•			CZ	8409128 A	17-01-1996
		·	DE	3484096 D	14-03-1991
			DK FI	567884 A 844708 A,B,	31-05-1985
			FI	884037 A,B,	31-05-1985
			GR	81097 A	01-09-1988 04-04-1985
			HÜ	35677 A	29-07-1985
			HU	199837 B	28-03-1990
			, IL	73686 A	31-05-1988
			JP	6092389 B	16-11-1994
			JP	60149583 A	07-08-1985
			KR	8800044 B	20-02-1988
			KR	8800489 B	08-04-1988
			KR	8800785 B	09-05-1988
			NO	844755 A,B,	31-05-1985
			NZ	210339 A	29-05-1987
			PH	23692 A	27-09-1989
			PH PL	26643 A	04-09-1992
			PT PT	250633 A	17-12-1985
			RO	79562 A,B 90414 A	01-12-1984 10-12-1986
			N'II		

information on patent family members

Inte onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

D-1					00/05676
Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0144101	Α		SK	912884 A	07-05-1997
		•	SU	1500162 A	07-08-1989
•			SU	1694064 A	23-11-1991
			US	4888426 A	19-12-1989
			US	5025014 A	18-06-1991
		•	US	4695569 A	22-09-1987
			ÜS	5126339 A	30-06-1992
		•	ZA	8409331 A	30-07-1986
			ZW	19484 A	07-05-1986
EP 0145037		10 06 1000			
Er 0145037	Α	19-06-1985	US	4634704 A	06-01-1987
			AT	40130 T	15-02-1989
			AU	565884 B	01-10-1987
		•	AU	3387284 A	18-04-1985
			BG	43007 A	15-03-1988
			CA	1247614 A	27-12-1988
			DE	3476204 D	23-02-1989
			DK	478484 A,B,	07-04-1985
			ES	536590 D	16-11-1985
			ES	8602763 A	16-03-1986
			FI	843934 A,B,	07-04-1985
			GR	80010 A	15-11-1984
•			ĤN	38629 A,B	30-06-1986
	٠		IL	73118 A	31-03-1988
			JP	7098818 B	25-10-1995
			JP	61010577 A	18-01-1986
		•	KR	8701509 B	20-08-1987
			KR	8701647 B	18-09-1987
			NO	844009 A,B,	09-04-1985
			NZ	209642 A	30-04-1987
			PH	21310 A	28-09-1987
			PL	249916 A	05-11-1985
			PT	79307 A,B	01-11-1984
			RO.	90457 A	10-12-1986
			SU	1440346 A	23-11-1988
′			· ZA	8407847 A	28-05-1986
			ZM	4584 A	28-05-1986
			ZW	16484 A	30-04-1986
			IE	57722 B	24-03-1993
EP 0151824	Α	21-08-1985	US	4588722 A	13-05-1986
			AT	51621 T	15-04-1990
			AU	575612 B	04-08-1988
			AU	3736385 A	01-08-1985
			BG	47033 A	16-04-1990
			CA	1246070 A	06-12-1988
			DE	3481841 D	10-05-1990
			DK	8885 A	10-07-1985
			ES	539266 D	16-01-1986
			ES	8604203 A	01-06-1986
			FI	850078 A,B,	10-07-1985
			GR	850059 A	11-01-1985
			HÜ	37780 A,B	28-02-1986
			ΪĒ	57968 B	03-06-1993
					<b>UU UU 1333</b>
				74017 A	
			IL	74017 A 60174778 A	31-03-1988
				74017 A 60174778 A 8701046 B	

information on patent family members

Inter onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0151824	A	NO 892563 A NZ 210675 A PH 21554 A PL 251476 A PT 79808 A,B RO 91075 A SU 1400509 A ZA 8500186 A ZM 385 A ZW 585 A	10-07-1985 29-05-1987 11-12-1987 17-12-1985 01-02-1985 27-02-1987 30-05-1988 27-08-1986 29-08-1986
EP 0151826	A 21-08-1985	AT 87626 T AU 573673 B AU 3736485 A BG 40965 A CA 1259609 A CZ 8500164 A DE 3486121 T DK 8985 A ES 539281 D ES 8706668 A FI 850079 A, B, GR 850060 A HU 36471 A, B IE 59707 B IL 74018 A JP 7068240 B JP 60185777 A KR 8701169 B KR 8800247 B KR 9001545 B KR 9001545 B KR 9001545 B KR 9001546 B NO 850085 A, B, NZ 210776 A PH 23995 A PL 251488 A PT 79809 A, B RO 90622 A SU 1396964 A US 4839374 A ZA 8500187 A ZM 285 A ZW 485 A US 4695575 A	05-04-1985 30-09-1985 23-03-1994 31-08-1988 26-07-1995 21-09-1985 15-06-1987 15-03-1988 12-03-1990
EP 0232937	A 19-08-1987	AT 79620 T AU 583706 B AU 6821887 A CA 1327579 A CN 87100563 A,B CS 9103825 A CY 1865 A DE 3781173 A DE 3781173 T DK 54187 A EG 17993 A ES 2052544 T	15-09-1992 04-05-1989 06-08-1987 08-03-1994 19-08-1987 13-05-1992 05-04-1996 24-09-1992 17-12-1992 04-08-1987 30-08-1991 16-07-1994

· information on patent family members

Inter Inter

Patent document	·	Publication		Patent family	00/056/6
cited in search repor	t	date		member(s)	Publication date
EP 0232937	Α		FI	870448 A	04-08-1987
			GR	3006158 T	21-06-1993
			HK	114695 A	21-07-1995
			HU	44544 A,B	28-03-1988
			ĪĒ	60885 B	24-08-1994
			ĬĹ	81448 A	17-09-1990
			JP	2063263 C	24-06-1996
			JP	7094393 B	11-10-1995
			JP	62215575 A	
•	•		JP	7179458 A	22-09-1987
			JP	8019126 B	18-07-1995
					28-02-1996
			NO	870407 A	04-08-1987
			NZ	219165 A	26-04-1990
			PH	24738 A	01-10-1990
			PT	84234 A,B	01-03-1987
			US	4835161 A	30-05-1989
			ZA	8700744 A	26-10-1988
			ZM	1287 A	29-08-1988
*			ZW	2087 A	31-08-1988
EP 0295742	Α	21-12-1988	AT	79878 T	15-09-1992
			AU	600144 B	02-08-1990
			. AU	1810988 A	22-12-1988
			CA	1324133 A	09-11-1993
			CN	88103784 A,B	28-12-1988
		•	DE	3874013 A	01-10-1992
			DE	3874013 T	07-01-1993
			DK	333288 A	20-12-1988
			ES	2045083 T	16-01-1994
			FI	882909 A,B,	20-12-1988
			GR	3006205 T	21-06-1993
			HÜ	48628 A,B	28-06-1989
			ΙE	61728 B	30-11-1994
			ĪĹ	86788 A	18-08-1992
			ĴΡ	1025776 A	27-01-1989
			ĴΡ	2609464 B	14-05-1997
			KR	9701158 B	29-01-1997
			NO	882641 A,B,	20-12-1988
			NZ	224928 A	26-04-1990
			PH	25532 A	24-07-1991
			PT	87742 A,B	01-07-1988
			SÜ	1644717 A	23-04-1991
			US	4897401 A	30-01-1990
			US	5006527 A	09-04-1991
			ZA	8804346 A	28-02-1990
					20 02-1330
EP 0297661	Α	04-01-1989	AT	80628 T	15-10-1992
			AU	603684 B	22-11-1990
			AU	1835388 A	05-01-1989
•			CA	1317939 A	18-05-1993
			DE	3874626 A	22-10-1992
			DE	3874626 T	25-02-1993
		,	ES	2052686 T	16-07-1994
		•	GR	3005715 T	07-06-1993
			ΙE	61360 B	02-11-1994
			ΙL	86921 A	15-11-1992
		•	JP NZ	1034979 A	06-02-1989

..dormation on patent family members

Inter Inal Application No
PCT/EP 00/05676

		<del></del>				CI/EF	00/05676
cited in se	locument arch report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)	·	Publication date
EP 029	7661	Α		PT	87866		30-06-1989
				US	4988689		29-01-1991
				US	5071846	A	10-12-1991
				US	5151424		29-09-1992
				ZA	8804696		28-03-1990
EP 030	7014	Α	15-03-1989	AT	83147	T	15-12-1992
				AU	608336	В	28-03-1991
				AU	1885388	A	12-01-1989
				CA	1324131	Α·	09-11-1993
				CN	1030587	A,B	25-01-1989
				DE	3876551		21-01-1993
				DE	3876551		15-04-1993
				DK	382388		11-01-1989
				ES	2042711		16-12-1993
				FI	883282		11-01-1989
				GR	3006971	T	30-06-1993
				HU	47573 61354	A,B	28-03-1989
				IL	87018		02-11-1994
				JP	1031782		21-02-1993 02-02-1989
				NO	883069		11-01-1989
				NZ	225151		26-04-1990
				· PT	87939		30-06-1989
				ÜS	4946843		07-08-1990
				US	5011842	Α	30-04-1991
				US	5086056	Α	04-02-1992
				ZA	8804946	A	28-03-1990
EP 393	738	A	24-10-1990	AT	114653		15-12-1994
				AU	615612		03-10-1991
				AU	5295190		11-10-1990
				CA	2013892		07-10-1990
				CN De	1046161 69014385		17-10-1990 12-01-1995
		*		DE	69014385		12-01-1995 20-04-1995
				DK	393738		16-01-1995
				ES	2067645		01-04-1995
				FΙ	95702		30-11-1995
				GR	3015154		31-05-1995
				. HU	58324	Α	28-02-1992
				ΙE	65460		01-11-1995
				ΙL	94008		18-02-1997
				JP	2290874		30-11-1990
				NO NZ	174851		11-04-1994
				NZ	233088		25-10-1991
				PT Ru	93671		20-11-1990
				US	2030415 5272150		10-03-1995
				ZA	9002664		21-12-1993 24-12-1991
EP 531	8	- <b></b> -	14-11-1979	 US	4219559		
LI 331	•	n	A7 11 13/3	AT	373887		26-08-1980 27-02-1984
				ÄŤ	242579		27-02-1984 15-07-1983
				AU	523352		22-07-1982
				AU	4529679		18-10-1979
				BG	38164		15-10-1985
				CA	1140119		25-01-1983
				• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	** ' \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	~	F3 01 130.1

...formation on patent family members

inter Anal Application No
PCT/EP 00/05676

Datast de susset		Outlines -	1		00/056/6
Patent document cited in search report	t	Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 5318	A		CS	7902227 A	12-03-1987
			CY	1250 A	31-08-1984
			DE	2961740 D	25-02-1982
			DK	83183 A	24-02-1983
			DK	129879 A	04-10-1979
			EG	13913 A	30-09-1982
			ES	479206 A	16-12-1979
			FI	791084 A,B,	04-10-1979
			GR	64907 A	07-06-1980
			HK	3184 A	20-01-1984
			HÜ	182965 B	28-03-1984
			ΙE	47818 B	27-06-1984
			IL	56992 A	31-03-1983
			JP	1001477 B	11-01-1989
			JP	1523384 C	12-10-1989
			JP	54151982 A	29 <del>-</del> 11-1979
•			JP	1117880 A	10-05-1989
			JP	1622522 C	25-10-1991
			JP	2040666 B	12-09-1990
			LV	5016 A	10-06-1993
			MY	4685 A	31-12-1985
			NO	791097 A,B,	
		•	NO	842563 A,B,	
4			NZ	189978 A	31-05-1984
			PH	15877 A	13-04-1983
			PL PT	214648 A	24-03-1980
			RO	69429 A	01-05-1979
			SG	79320 A 29883 G	17-08-1982
			SU	1056902 A	19-04-1984 23-11-1983
			YU	50283 A	31-12-1983
			YÜ	78479 A	31-10-1983
			ZA	7901557 A	26-11-1980
			AT	373888 B	27-02-1984
			AT	453882 A	15-07-1983
			CS	8403451 A	12-03-1987
			KR	8300677 A	28-03-1983
WO 9201697	A	06-02-1992	AT	188477 T	15-01-2000
		<del>-</del>	AU	646280 B	17-02-1994
			AU	8209391 A	18-02-1992
			CA	2086546 A	20-01-1992
		,	CN	1058216 A,B	29-01-1992
			CS	9102239 A	19-02-1992
			DE	69131895 D	10-02-2000
			DE	69131895 T	20-07-2000
			EP	0539420 A	05-05-1993
			ES	2142802 T	01-05-2000
			FI	930199 A	18-01-1993
			HU	64066 A	29-11-1993
			IL	98865 A	27-11-1995
			KR	206723 B	01-07-1999
			MX	9100307 A	28-02-1992
			NO	304791 B	15-02-1999
			NZ	238863 A	26-03-1993
			PL	170580 B	31-01-1997
			P. T.		
			PT RU	98366 A,B 2067978 C	29-05-1992 20 <b>-</b> 10-1996

information on patent family members

Inte. onal Application No PCT/EP 00/05676

Potent desument		5.1			
Patent document cited in search repo	rt	Publication date		Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9201697	Α		US	5360807 A	01-11-1994
			ZA	9105654 A	31-03-1993
WO 9201687	Α	06-02-1992	AP	267 A	16-06-1993
			AT	171449 T	15-10-1998
			AU	644202 B	02-12-1993
			AU	8214191 A	18-02-1992
			BG	61342 B	30-06-1997
			BG	97314 A	18-01-1994
			CA	2086545 A	20-01-1992
			CN	1058215 A,B	29-01-1992
			CS	9102240 A	19-02-1992
			DE	69130255 D	29-10-1998
			DE	69130255 T	08-04-1999
			EP	0539421 A	05-05-1993
			ES	2121784 T	16-12-1998
			FI	930198 A	18-01-1993
			HR	930484 A	30-04-1996
			HU	64340 A	28-12-1993
			IL	98864 A	08-12-1995
			JP	3070951 B	31-07-2000
			KR	190299 B	01-06-1999
			MX	9100312 A	28-02-1992
			NO	300459 B	02-06-1997
			NZ	238864 A	26-08-1993
			PL	169361 B	31-07-1996
			PT	98365 A,B	29-05-1992
			RO	111768 A	30-01-1997
			RU	2059636 C	10-05-1996
			SI	9111263 A	30-04-1995
			SK	278133 B	07-02-1996
			US	5278165 A	11-01-1994
			US	5217980 A	08-06-1993
			ZA.	9105653 A	31-03-1993
WO 9810764	Α	19-03-1998	AU	71 <b>7</b> 354 B	23-03-2000
			AU	4621397 A	02-04-1998
			BR	9712033 A	18-01-2000
			CN	1230116 A	29-09-1999
			CZ	9900830 A	16-06-1999
			EP	0936909 A	25-08-1999
•			NO	991164 A	10-03-1999
			PL	332316 A	30-08-1999
			ZA	9707874 A	02-03-1999
EP 58146	Α	18-08-1982	AT	8140 T	15-07-1984
			ΑU	544066 B	16-05-1985
			AU	8023182 A	12-08-1982
			BA	97198 B	02-08-1999
			BA	97199 B	02-08-1999
			CA	1199918 A	28-01-1986
			CY	1307 A	06-12-1985
			DE	3260282 D	02-08-1984
•			DK	5388 A,B,	07-01-1988
			DK	44082 A,B,	07-08-1982
			ES	509358 D	01-08-1983
			ES	8307776 A	01-11-1983
			LJ	0301110 M	(/ -  -  -

...formation on patent family members

PCT/EP 00/05676

Patent document cited in search report			Publication date
EP 58146 A		ES 8406455	A 01-11-1984
		FI 820318	
		GR 75407	
		HK 86485	A 15-11-1985
		JP 1463099	C 28-10-1988
		JP 57149282	
		JP 63011353	B 14-03-1988
		LT 2553	R 28-02-1994
·		LV 5494	A 10-03-1994
		MY 27987	A 31-12-1987
		NO 820297	A,B, 09-08-1982
		NZ 199650	A 06-07-1984
		PL 234935	A 09-05-1983
		PL 239687	A 18-07-1983
		PT 74390	A,B 01-03-1982
		SU 1227113	A 23-04-1986
		SU 1310397	A 15-05-1987
		SU 1287749	A 30-01-1987
		US 4525358	A 25-06-1985
•		YU 23782	A 30-06-1985
		YU 223584	
		ZA 8200752	A 29-12-1982
		HU 184989	B 28-11-1984

ν**η 18 Φ β**τ

•